




CLI Reference Guide

Jetstream Smart Switches

1910012776 REV4.3.0

June 2020

COPYRIGHT & TRADEMARKS

Specifications are subject to change without notice.  tp-link is a registered trademark of TP-Link Technologies Co., Ltd. Other brands and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.

No part of the specifications may be reproduced in any form or by any means or used to make any derivative such as translation, transformation, or adaptation without permission from TP-Link Technologies Co., Ltd. Copyright © 2020 TP-Link Technologies Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

<https://www.tp-link.com>

CONTENTS

Preface	1
Chapter 1 Using the CLI	5
1.1 Accessing the CLI	5
1.1.1 Logon by Telnet	5
1.1.2 Logon by SSH	6
1.2 CLI Command Modes	11
1.3 Privilege Restrictions	14
1.4 Conventions	14
1.4.1 PoE Disclaimer	14
1.4.2 Format Conventions	15
1.4.3 Special Characters	15
1.4.4 Parameter Format	15
Chapter 2 User Interface	16
2.1 enable	16
2.2 service password-encryption	16
2.3 enable password	17
2.4 enable secret	18
2.5 configure	19
2.6 exit	20
2.7 end	20
2.8 clipaging	21
2.9 history	21
2.10 history clear	22
Chapter 3 User Management Commands	23
3.1 user name (password)	23
3.2 user name (secret)	24
3.3 show user account-list	25
3.4 show user configuration	26
Chapter 4 System Configuration Commands	27
4.1 system-time manual	27
4.2 system-time ntp	27
4.3 system-time dst predefined	29
4.4 system-time dst date	30

4.5	system-time dst recurring.....	31
4.6	hostname.....	32
4.7	location	33
4.8	contact-info	33
4.9	led (Only for Certain Devices)	34
4.10	ip address.....	34
4.11	ip address-alloc.....	35
4.12	controller cloud-based (Only for Certain Devices)	36
4.13	controller inform-url (Only for Certain Devices)	37
4.14	reset	37
4.15	service reset-disable.....	38
4.16	reboot.....	39
4.17	reboot-schedule	39
4.18	copy running-config startup-config	40
4.19	copy startup-config tftp	41
4.20	copy tftp startup-config	41
4.21	copy backup-config tftp.....	42
4.22	copy backup-config startup-config	43
4.23	copy running-config backup-config.....	43
4.24	copy tftp backup-config	44
4.25	boot application	44
4.26	boot config.....	45
4.27	remove backup-image.....	46
4.28	firmware upgrade.....	46
4.29	ping.....	47
4.30	tracert	48
4.31	show system-info.....	49
4.32	show image-info.....	50
4.33	show boot.....	50
4.34	show running-config	51
4.35	show startup-config	51
4.36	show system-time	52
4.37	show system-time dst.....	52
4.38	show system-time ntp.....	53
4.39	show cable-diagnostics interface.....	53
4.40	show cpu-utilization.....	54
4.41	show memory-utilization	54
4.42	show controller (Only for Certain Devices).....	55

Chapter 5	EEE Configuration Commands	56
5.1	eee	56
5.2	show interface eee	56
Chapter 6	SDM Template Commands	58
6.1	sdm prefer	58
6.2	show sdm prefer	59
Chapter 7	Time Range Commands	60
7.1	time-range	60
7.2	absolute	60
7.3	periodic	61
7.4	holiday (time-range mode)	62
7.5	holiday	63
7.6	show holiday	63
7.7	show time-range	64
Chapter 8	Port Configuration Commands	65
8.1	interface gigabitEthernet	65
8.2	interface range gigabitEthernet	65
8.3	description	66
8.4	shutdown	67
8.5	flow-control	68
8.6	duplex	68
8.7	jumbo-size	69
8.8	speed	69
8.9	serdes-mode	70
8.10	clear counters	71
8.11	show interface status	71
8.12	show interface counters	72
8.13	show interface configuration	73
Chapter 9	Port Isolation Commands	74
9.1	port isolation	74
9.2	show port isolation interface	75
Chapter 10	Loopback Detection Commands	76
10.1	loopback-detection (global)	76
10.2	loopback-detection interval	76

10.3	loopback-detection recovery-time	77
10.4	loopback-detection (interface).....	78
10.5	loopback-detection config process-mode.....	78
10.6	loopback-detection recover	79
10.7	show loopback-detection global	80
10.8	show loopback-detection interface	80
Chapter 11 Etherchannel Commands		82
11.1	channel-group	82
11.2	port-channel load-balance.....	83
11.3	lacp system-priority	84
11.4	lacp port-priority	85
11.5	show etherchannel	85
11.6	show etherchannel load-balance.....	86
11.7	show lacp.....	87
11.8	show lacp sys-id.....	87
Chapter 12 MAC Address Commands.....		89
12.1	mac address-table static.....	89
12.2	no mac address-table dynamic.....	90
12.3	mac address-table aging-time	90
12.4	mac address-table filtering	91
12.5	mac address-table max-mac-count.....	92
12.6	show mac address-table	93
12.7	clear mac address-table.....	94
12.8	show mac address-table aging-time.....	94
12.9	show mac address-table max-mac-count	95
12.10	show mac address-table interface	95
12.11	show mac address-table count.....	96
12.12	show mac address-table address.....	96
12.13	show mac address-table vlan.....	97
Chapter 13 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Commands		98
13.1	vlan	98
13.2	name.....	99
13.3	vlan_trunk (globally)	99
13.4	vlan_trunk (interface).....	100
13.5	switchport general allowed vlan.....	100
13.6	switchport pvid.....	101

13.7	switchport check ingress	102
13.8	switchport acceptable frame.....	103
13.9	show vlan summary	103
13.10	show vlan brief.....	104
13.11	show vlan.....	104
13.12	show interface switchport.....	105
Chapter 14 MAC-based VLAN Commands.....		106
14.1	mac-vlan mac-address	106
14.2	mac-vlan.....	107
14.3	show mac-vlan.....	107
14.4	show mac-vlan interface	108
Chapter 15 Protocol-based VLAN Commands		109
15.1	protocol-vlan template	109
15.2	protocol-vlan vlan	110
15.3	protocol-vlan group.....	111
15.4	show protocol-vlan template.....	111
15.5	show protocol-vlan vlan.....	112
Chapter 16 GVRP Commands.....		113
16.1	gvrp.....	113
16.2	gvrp (interface)	113
16.3	gvrp registration.....	114
16.4	gvrp timer	115
16.5	show gvrp interface.....	116
16.6	show gvrp global	117
Chapter 17 IGMP Snooping Commands.....		118
17.1	ip igmp snooping (global).....	118
17.2	ip igmp snooping version	118
17.3	ip igmp snooping drop-unknown	119
17.4	ip igmp snooping header-validation.....	120
17.5	ip igmp snooping vlan-config	120
17.6	ip igmp snooping vlan-config (immediate-leave)	122
17.7	ip igmp snooping vlan-config (report-suppression)	122
17.8	ip igmp snooping vlan-config (router-ports-forbidden).....	123
17.9	ip igmp snooping vlan-config (rport interface)	124
17.10	ip igmp snooping vlan-config (static)	125

17.11	ip igmp snooping vlan-config (querier)	126
17.12	ip igmp snooping (interface)	127
17.13	ip igmp snooping max-groups.....	128
17.14	ip igmp snooping immediate-leave.....	129
17.15	ip igmp profile.....	129
17.16	deny.....	130
17.17	permit.....	130
17.18	range	131
17.19	ip igmp filter	132
17.20	clear ip igmp snooping statistics	132
17.21	show ip igmp snooping	133
17.22	show ip igmp snooping interface	133
17.23	show ip igmp snooping vlan.....	134
17.24	show ip igmp snooping groups	135
17.25	show ip igmp profile.....	136
Chapter 18 MLD Snooping Commands.....		137
18.1	ipv6 mld snooping (global).....	137
18.2	ipv6 mld snooping drop-unknown	137
18.3	ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config	138
18.4	ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (immediate-leave)	139
18.5	ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (report-suppression)	140
18.6	ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (router-ports-forbidden).....	141
18.7	ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (rport interface)	142
18.8	ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (static)	142
18.9	ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (querier)	143
18.10	ipv6 mld snooping (interface)	145
18.11	ipv6 mld snooping max-groups.....	145
18.12	ipv6 mld snooping immediate-leave	146
18.13	ipv6 mld profile.....	147
18.14	deny.....	148
18.15	permit.....	148
18.16	range	149
18.17	ipv6 mld filter	149
18.18	clear ipv6 mld snooping statistics	150
18.19	show ipv6 mld snooping.....	150
18.20	show ipv6 mld snooping interface.....	151
18.21	show ipv6 mld snooping vlan.....	152

18.22	show ipv6 mld snooping groups	152
18.23	show ipv6 mld profile	153
Chapter 19 MVR Commands		154
19.1	mvr (global).....	154
19.2	mvr group	154
19.3	mvr mode.....	155
19.4	mvr querytime.....	156
19.5	mvr vlan.....	157
19.6	mvr (interface).....	157
19.7	mvr type.....	158
19.8	mvr immediate.....	159
19.9	mvr vlan (group).....	159
19.10	show mvr	160
19.11	show mvr interface	161
19.12	show mvr members	161
Chapter 20 MSTP Commands		163
20.1	debug spanning-tree.....	163
20.2	spanning-tree (global)	164
20.3	spanning-tree (interface)	164
20.4	spanning-tree common-config	165
20.5	spanning-tree mode.....	166
20.6	spanning-tree mst configuration	167
20.7	instance	167
20.8	name.....	168
20.9	revision	169
20.10	spanning-tree mst instance	170
20.11	spanning-tree mst	170
20.12	spanning-tree priority	171
20.13	spanning-tree timer	172
20.14	spanning-tree hold-count	173
20.15	spanning-tree max-hops	173
20.16	spanning-tree bpdudfilter.....	174
20.17	spanning-tree bpdudflood.....	175
20.18	spanning-tree bpduguard	175
20.19	spanning-tree guard loop.....	176
20.20	spanning-tree guard root.....	177

20.21	spanning-tree guard tc	177
20.22	spanning-tree mcheck.....	178
20.23	show spanning-tree active.....	178
20.24	show spanning-tree bridge	179
20.25	show spanning-tree interface.....	179
20.26	show spanning-tree interface-security	180
20.27	show spanning-tree mst.....	181
Chapter 21 LLDP Commands.....		183
21.1	lldp	183
21.2	lldp forward_message.....	183
21.3	lldp hold-multiplier	184
21.4	lldp timer.....	185
21.5	lldp receive.....	186
21.6	lldp transmit	186
21.7	lldp snmp-trap	187
21.8	lldp tlv-select	188
21.9	lldp management-address	188
21.10	lldp med-fast-count.....	189
21.11	lldp med-status	190
21.12	lldp med-tlv-select.....	190
21.13	lldp med-location	191
21.14	show lldp.....	192
21.15	show lldp interface.....	192
21.16	show lldp local-information interface.....	193
21.17	show lldp neighbor-information interface	194
21.18	show lldp traffic interface.....	194
Chapter 22 Static Routes Commands		196
22.1	ip routing.....	196
22.2	interface vlan	196
22.3	interface loopback.....	197
22.4	switchport	197
22.5	interface range port-channel.....	198
22.6	description	199
22.7	shutdown.....	199
22.8	interface port-channel	200
22.9	ip route	201

22.10	ipv6 routing	201
22.11	ipv6 route	202
22.12	show interface vlan.....	203
22.13	show ip interface.....	203
22.14	show ip interface brief.....	204
22.15	show ip route	204
22.16	show ip route specify	205
22.17	show ip route summary.....	206
22.18	show ipv6 interface	206
22.19	show ipv6 route.....	207
22.20	show ipv6 route summary	207
Chapter 23 IPv6 Address Configuration Commands		209
23.1	ipv6 enable.....	209
23.2	ipv6 address autoconfig.....	209
23.3	ipv6 address link-local	210
23.4	ipv6 address dhcp	211
23.5	ipv6 address ra.....	211
23.6	ipv6 address eui-64.....	212
23.7	ipv6 address	213
23.8	show ipv6 interface	214
Chapter 24 ARP Commands.....		215
24.1	arp.....	215
24.2	clear arp-cache	216
24.3	arp dynamicrenew	216
24.4	arp timeout.....	217
24.5	gratuitous-arp intf-status-up enable.....	217
24.6	gratuitous-arp dup-ip-detected enable.....	218
24.7	gratuitous-arp learning enable	218
24.8	gratuitous-arp send-interval.....	219
24.9	ip proxy-arp.....	220
24.10	ip local-proxy-arp.....	220
24.11	show arp	221
24.12	show ip arp (interface).....	222
24.13	show ip arp summary	222
24.14	show gratuitous-arp	223
24.15	show ip proxy-arp	223

Chapter 25	DHCP Server Commands	225
25.1	service dhcp server	225
25.2	ip dhcp server extend-option capwap-ac-ip	225
25.3	ip dhcp server extend-option vendor-class-id	226
25.4	ip dhcp server exclude-address	227
25.5	ip dhcp server pool	227
25.6	ip dhcp server ping timeout	228
25.7	ip dhcp server ping packets	229
25.8	network	229
25.9	lease	230
25.10	address hardware-address	231
25.11	address client-identifier	232
25.12	default-gateway	232
25.13	dns-server	233
25.14	netbios-name-server	234
25.15	netbios-node-type	234
25.16	next-server	235
25.17	domain-name	236
25.18	bootfile	236
25.19	show ip dhcp server status	237
25.20	show ip dhcp server statistics	237
25.21	show ip dhcp server extend-option	238
25.22	show ip dhcp server pool	238
25.23	show ip dhcp server excluded-address	239
25.24	show ip dhcp server manual-binding	239
25.25	show ip dhcp server binding	240
25.26	clear ip dhcp server statistics	240
25.27	clear ip dhcp server binding	241
Chapter 26	DHCP Relay Commands	242
26.1	service dhcp relay	242
26.2	ip dhcp relay hops	242
26.3	ip dhcp relay time	243
26.4	ip helper-address	244
26.5	ip dhcp relay information	244
26.6	ip dhcp relay information strategy	245
26.7	ip dhcp relay information format	246
26.8	ip dhcp relay information circuit-id	247

26.9	ip dhcp relay information remote-id	247
26.10	ip dhcp relay default-interface	248
26.11	ip dhcp relay vlan	249
26.12	show ip dhcp relay	249
Chapter 27 DHCP L2 Relay Commands		251
27.1	ip dhcp l2relay	251
27.2	ip dhcp l2relay vlan	251
27.3	ip dhcp l2relay information.....	252
27.4	ip dhcp l2relay information strategy.....	252
27.5	ip dhcp l2relay information format.....	253
27.6	ip dhcp l2relay information circuit-id.....	254
27.7	ip dhcp l2relay information remote-id.....	255
27.8	show ip dhcp l2relay.....	255
27.9	show ip dhcp l2relay interface.....	256
Chapter 28 QoS Commands.....		257
28.1	qos trust mode	257
28.2	qos port-priority	258
28.3	qos cos-map	258
28.4	qos dot1p-remap	259
28.5	qos dscp-map.....	260
28.6	qos dscp-remap	261
28.7	qos queue mode	261
28.8	show qos cos-map	262
28.9	show qos dot1p-remap	263
28.10	show qos dscp-map	263
28.11	show qos dscp-remap	264
28.12	show qos port-priority interface	264
28.13	show qos trust interface.....	265
28.14	show qos queue interface	265
Chapter 29 Bandwidth Control Commands		267
29.1	storm-control rate-mode	267
29.2	storm-control.....	268
29.3	storm-control exceed	269
29.4	storm-control recover	269
29.5	bandwidth.....	270
29.6	show storm-control.....	271

29.7	show bandwidth	271
Chapter 30 Voice VLAN Commands		273
30.1	voice vlan.....	273
30.2	voice vlan (interface)	273
30.3	voice vlan priority	274
30.4	voice vlan oui	275
30.5	show voice vlan	275
30.6	show voice vlan oui-table	276
30.7	show voice vlan interface	276
Chapter 31 Auto VoIP Commands.....		278
31.1	auto-voip	278
31.2	auto-voip (interface).....	278
31.3	auto-voip dot1p.....	279
31.4	auto-voip untagged	280
31.5	auto-voip none	280
31.6	no auto-voip (interface).....	281
31.7	auto-voip dscp	281
31.8	auto-voip data priority.....	282
31.9	show auto-voip.....	282
Chapter 32 Access Control Commands		284
32.1	user access-control ip-based enable	284
32.2	user access-control ip-based	284
32.3	user access-control mac-based enable.....	285
32.4	user access-control mac-based.....	286
32.5	user access-control port-based enable.....	287
32.6	user access-control port-based	287
Chapter 33 HTTP and HTTPS Commands		289
33.1	ip http server.....	289
33.2	ip http port.....	290
33.3	ip http max-users	290
33.4	ip http session timeout	291
33.5	ip http secure-server.....	292
33.6	ip http secure-port.....	292
33.7	ip http secure-protocol.....	293
33.8	ip http secure-ciphersuite	294

33.9	ip http secure-max-users	295
33.10	ip http secure-session timeout	296
33.11	ip http secure-server download certificate.....	296
33.12	ip http secure-server download key.....	297
33.13	show ip http configuration.....	298
33.14	show ip http secure-server	299
Chapter 34 SSH Commands.....		300
34.1	ip ssh server.....	300
34.2	ip ssh port.....	300
34.3	ip ssh version.....	301
34.4	ip ssh algorithm	302
34.5	ip ssh timeout	302
34.6	ip ssh max-client	303
34.7	ip ssh download.....	304
34.8	remove public-key.....	304
34.9	show ip ssh.....	305
Chapter 35 Telnet Commands.....		306
35.1	telnet	306
35.2	telnet enable	306
35.3	telnet port.....	307
35.4	show telnet-status.....	307
Chapter 36 AAA Commands		309
36.1	tacacs-server host	309
36.2	show tacacs-server	310
36.3	radius-server host	311
36.4	show radius-server.....	312
36.5	aaa group.....	313
36.6	server	313
36.7	show aaa group	314
36.8	aaa authentication login.....	315
36.9	aaa authentication enable	316
36.10	aaa authentication dot1x default.....	317
36.11	aaa accounting dot1x default	317
36.12	show aaa authentication.....	318
36.13	show aaa accounting.....	319
36.14	line telnet.....	319

36.15	login authentication (telnet).....	320
36.16	line ssh	320
36.17	login authentication (ssh).....	321
36.18	enable authentication (telnet)	322
36.19	enable authentication (ssh)	322
36.20	ip http login authentication.....	323
36.21	ip http enable authentication	324
36.22	show aaa global.....	325
36.23	enable admin password.....	325
36.24	enable admin secret.....	326
36.25	enable-admin.....	327
Chapter 37 IEEE 802.1x Commands.....		329
37.1	dot1x system-auth-control.....	329
37.2	dot1x handshake.....	330
37.3	dot1x auth-protocol	330
37.4	dot1x vlan-assignment	331
37.5	dot1x accounting.....	332
37.6	dot1x mab	333
37.7	dot1x guest-vlan	333
37.8	dot1x timeout quiet-period	334
37.9	dot1x timeout supp-timeout.....	335
37.10	dot1x max- req	336
37.11	dot1x	336
37.12	dot1x port-control	337
37.13	dot1x port-method	338
37.14	dot1x auth-init	339
37.15	dot1x auth-reauth	339
37.16	show dot1x global.....	340
37.17	show dot1x interface.....	341
37.18	show dot1x auth-state interface	341
Chapter 38 Port Security Commands.....		343
38.1	mac address-table max-mac count.....	343
38.2	show mac address-table max-mac-count	343
Chapter 39 Port Mirroring Commands.....		345
39.1	monitor session destination interface	345
39.2	monitor session source	346

39.3	show monitor session	347
Chapter 40 ACL Commands		349
40.1	access-list create	349
40.2	access-list resequence	349
40.3	access-list mac	350
40.4	access-list ip	352
40.5	access-list combined	353
40.6	access-list ipv6	355
40.7	access-list action	357
40.8	redirect	358
40.9	s-condition	359
40.10	s-mirror	359
40.11	qos-remark	360
40.12	access bind	361
40.13	show access-list	362
40.14	show access-list bind	362
40.15	show access-list status	363
40.16	show access-list counter	363
40.17	clear access-list	364
Chapter 41 IPv4 IMPB Commands		365
41.1	ip source binding	365
41.2	ip dhcp snooping	366
41.3	ip dhcp snooping vlan	367
41.4	ip dhcp snooping max-entries	367
41.5	show ip source binding	368
41.6	show ip dhcp snooping	369
41.7	show ip dhcp snooping interface	369
Chapter 42 IPv6 IMPB Commands		371
42.1	ipv6 source binding	371
42.2	ipv6 dhcp snooping	372
42.3	ipv6 dhcp snooping vlan	373
42.4	ipv6 dhcp snooping max-entries	373
42.5	ipv6 nd snooping	374
42.6	ipv6 nd snooping vlan	375
42.7	ipv6 nd snooping max-entries	375
42.8	show ipv6 source binding	376

42.9	show ipv6 dhcp snooping.....	377
42.10	show ipv6 dhcp snooping interface	377
42.11	show ipv6 nd snooping	378
Chapter 43 IP Verify Source Commands.....		379
43.1	ip verify source	379
43.2	ip verify source logging.....	380
43.3	show ip verify source	380
43.4	show ip verify source interface	381
Chapter 44 IPv6 Verify Source Commands		382
44.1	ipv6 verify source.....	382
44.2	show ipv6 verify source	383
44.3	show ipv6 verify source interface.....	383
Chapter 45 DHCPv4 Filter Commands		385
45.1	ip dhcp filter	385
45.2	ip dhcp filter (interface).....	385
45.3	ip dhcp filter mac-verify.....	386
45.4	ip dhcp filter limit rate.....	387
45.5	ip dhcp filter decline rate	388
45.6	ip dhcp filter server permit-entry	388
45.7	show ip dhcp filter.....	389
45.8	show ip dhcp filter interface.....	390
45.9	show ip dhcp filter server permit-entry.....	390
Chapter 46 DHCPv6 Filter Commands		392
46.1	ipv6 dhcp filter	392
46.2	ipv6 dhcp filter (interface).....	392
46.3	ipv6 dhcp filter limit rate	393
46.4	ipv6 dhcp filter decline rate.....	394
46.5	ipv6 dhcp filter server permit-entry.....	395
46.6	show ipv6 dhcp filter	396
46.7	show ipv6 dhcp filter interface	396
46.8	show ip dhcp filter server permit-entry.....	397
Chapter 47 DoS Defend Commands.....		398
47.1	ip dos-prevent	398
47.2	ip dos-prevent type	398

47.3	show ip dos-prevent.....	400
Chapter 48 DLDP Commands.....		402
48.1	dldp (global).....	402
48.2	dldp interval.....	402
48.3	dldp shut-mode.....	403
48.4	dldp(interface).....	404
48.5	show dldp.....	404
48.6	show dldp interface.....	405
Chapter 49 SNMP Commands.....		406
49.1	snmp-server.....	406
49.2	snmp-server view.....	406
49.3	snmp-server group.....	407
49.4	snmp-server user.....	409
49.5	snmp-server community.....	410
49.6	snmp-server host.....	411
49.7	snmp-server engineID.....	413
49.8	snmp-server traps snmp.....	414
49.9	snmp-server traps.....	415
49.10	snmp-server traps vlan.....	416
49.11	snmp-server traps security.....	417
49.12	snmp-server traps acl.....	418
49.13	snmp-server traps ip.....	418
49.14	snmp-server traps power (Only for Certain Devices).....	419
49.15	snmp-server traps link-status.....	420
49.16	rmon history.....	421
49.17	rmon event.....	422
49.18	rmon alarm.....	423
49.19	rmon statistics.....	424
49.20	show snmp-server.....	425
49.21	show snmp-server view.....	425
49.22	show snmp-server group.....	426
49.23	show snmp-server user.....	426
49.24	show snmp-server community.....	427
49.25	show snmp-server host.....	427
49.26	show snmp-server engineID.....	428
49.27	show rmon history.....	428

49.28	show rmon event.....	429
49.29	show rmon alarm.....	429
49.30	show rmon statistics	430
Chapter 50 PoE Commands (Only for Certain Devices)		431
50.1	power inline consumption (global)	431
50.2	power profile	431
50.3	power inline consumption (interface)	432
50.4	power inline priority	433
50.5	power inline supply	434
50.6	power inline profile.....	434
50.7	power inline time-range	435
50.8	show power inline	436
50.9	show power inline configuration interface	436
50.10	show power inline information interface.....	437
50.11	show power profile	437
Chapter 51 ARP Inspection Commands.....		439
51.1	ip arp inspection.....	439
51.2	ip arp inspection validate.....	439
51.3	ip arp inspection vlan	440
51.4	ip arp inspection vlan logging	441
51.5	ip arp inspection trust	442
51.6	ip arp inspection limit-rate.....	442
51.7	ip arp inspection burst-interval	443
51.8	ip arp inspection recover	444
51.9	show ip arp inspection	444
51.10	show ip arp inspection interface	445
51.11	show ip arp inspection vlan	446
51.12	show ip arp inspection statistics	446
51.13	clear ip arp inspection statistics	447
Chapter 52 ND Detection Commands		448
52.1	ipv6 nd detection	448
52.2	ipv6 nd detection vlan	448
52.3	ipv6 nd detection vlan logging.....	449
52.4	ipv6 nd detection trust.....	449
52.5	show ipv6 nd detection.....	450
52.6	show ipv6 nd detection interface.....	450

52.7	show ipv6 nd detection vlan	451
Chapter 53 System Log Commands		452
53.1	logging buffer	452
53.2	logging buffer level	452
53.3	logging file flash	453
53.4	logging file flash frequency	454
53.5	logging file flash level	455
53.6	logging host index	455
53.7	logging console	456
53.8	logging console level	457
53.9	logging monitor	458
53.10	logging monitor level	458
53.11	clear logging	459
53.12	show logging local-config	460
53.13	show logging loghost	460
53.14	show logging buffer	461
53.15	show logging flash	461

Preface

This Guide is intended for network administrator to provide referenced information about CLI (Command Line Interface). The device mentioned in this Guide stands for JetStream Gigabit Smart Switch without any explanation. Some models featured in this guide may be unavailable in your country or region. For local sales information, visit <https://www.tp-link.com>.

Overview of this Guide

Chapter 1: Using the CLI

Provide information about how to use the CLI, CLI Command Modes, Security Levels and some Conventions.

Chapter 2: User Interface

Provide information about the commands used to switch between five CLI Command Modes.

Chapter 3: User Management Commands

Provide information about the commands used for user management.

Chapter 4: System Configuration Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the System information and System IP, reboot and reset the switch, upgrade the switch system and commands used for cable test.

Chapter 5: EEE Configuration Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring EEE.

Chapter 6: SDM Template Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the SDM templates.

Chapter 7: Time Range Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the time range.

Chapter 8: Port Configuration Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the Speed, Negotiation Mode, and Flow Control for Ethernet ports.

Chapter 9: Port Isolation Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring Port Isolation function.

Chapter 10: Loopback Detection Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the Loopback Detection function.

Chapter 11: Etherchannel Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring LAG (Link Aggregation Group) and LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol).

Chapter 12: MAC Address Commands

Provide information about the commands used for Address configuration.

Chapter 13: IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring IEEE 802.1Q VLAN.

Chapter 14: MAC-based VLAN Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring MAC-based VLAN.

Chapter 15: Protocol-based VLAN Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring Protocol VLAN.

Chapter 16: GVRP Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring GVRP (GARP VLAN registration protocol).

Chapter 17: IGMP Snooping Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the IGMP Snooping (Internet Group Management Protocol Snooping).

Chapter 18: MLD Snooping Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the MLD Snooping (Multicast Listener Discovery Snooping).

Chapter 19: MVR Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the MVR.

Chapter 20: MSTP Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol).

Chapter 21: LLDP Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring LLDP function.

Chapter 22: Static Routes Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the Static Route function.

Chapter 23: IPv6 Address Configuration Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the System IPv6 addresses.

Chapter 24: ARP Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) functions.

Chapter 25: DHCP Server Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the DHCP Server function.

Chapter 26: DHCP Relay Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the DHCP Relay function.

Chapter 27: DHCP L2 Relay Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the DHCP L2 Relay function.

Chapter 28: QoS Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the QoS function.

Chapter 29: Bandwidth Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the Bandwidth Control.

Chapter 30: Voice VLAN Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring Voice VLAN.

Chapter 31 Auto VoIP Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring Auto VoIP.

Chapter 32: Access Control Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring Access Control.

Chapter 33: HTTP and HTTPS Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the HTTP and HTTPS logon.

Chapter 34: SSH Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring and managing SSH (Security Shell).

Chapter 35: Telnet Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring and managing SSH (Security Shell).

Chapter 36: AAA Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring AAA (authentication, authorization and accounting).

Chapter 37: IEEE 802.1X Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring IEEE 802.1X function.

Chapter 38 Port Security Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring Port Security.

Chapter 39: Port Mirroring Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the Port Mirror function.

Chapter 40: ACL Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the ACL (Access Control List).

Chapter 41: IPv4 IMPB Commands

Provide information about the commands used for binding the IP address, MAC address, VLAN and the connected Port number of the Host together.

Chapter 42: IPv6 IMPB Commands

Provide information about the commands used for binding the IPv6 address, MAC address, VLAN and the connected Port number of the Host together.

Chapter 43: IP Verify Source Commands

Provide information about the commands used for guarding the IP Source by filtering the IP packets based on the IP-MAC Binding entries.

Chapter 44: IPv6 Verify Source Commands

Provide information about the commands used for guarding the IPv6 Source by filtering the IP packets based on the IP-MAC Binding entries.

Chapter 45: DHCPv4 Filter Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the DHCPv4 Filter.

Chapter 46: DHCPv6 Filter Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the DHCPv6 Filter.

Chapter 47: DoS Defend Command

Provide information about the commands used for DoS defend and detecting the DoS attack.

Chapter 48: DLDP Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the DLDP (Device Link Detection Protocol).

Chapter 49: SNMP Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring the SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) functions.

Chapter 50: PoE Commands (Only for certain devices)

Provide information about the commands used for configuring PoE function.

Chapter 51: ARP Inspection Commands

Provide information about the commands used for protecting the switch from the ARP cheating or ARP Attack.

Chapter 52: ND Detection Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring ND detection.

Chapter 53: System Log Commands

Provide information about the commands used for configuring system log.

Chapter 1 Using the CLI

1.1 Accessing the CLI

You can log on to the switch and access the CLI by logging on to the switch remotely by a Telnet or SSH connection through an Ethernet port.

1.1.1 Logon by Telnet

To log on to the switch by a Telnet connection, please take the following steps:

1. Click **Start** and type in **cmd** in the Search programs and files window and press the **Enter** button.

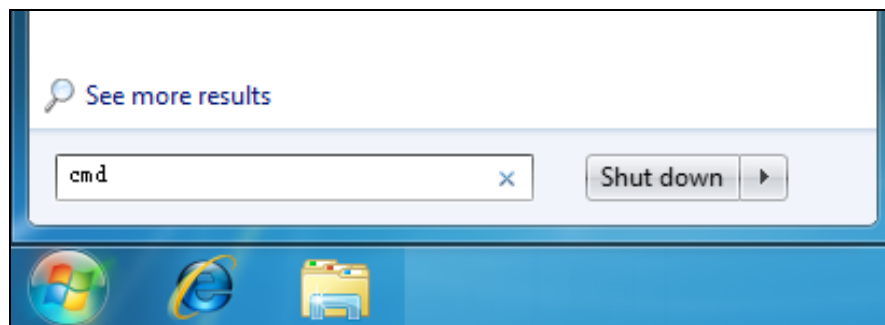


Figure 1-1 Run Window

2. Type in telnet 192.168.0.1 in the cmd window and press **Enter**.

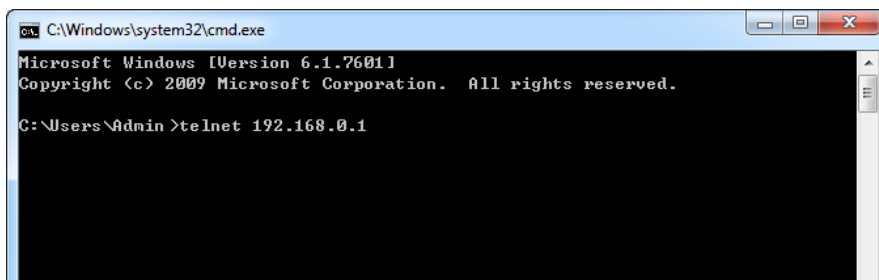


Figure 1-2 Type in the telnet command

3. Type in the login username and password (both **admin** by default). Press **Enter** and you will enter User EXEC Mode.

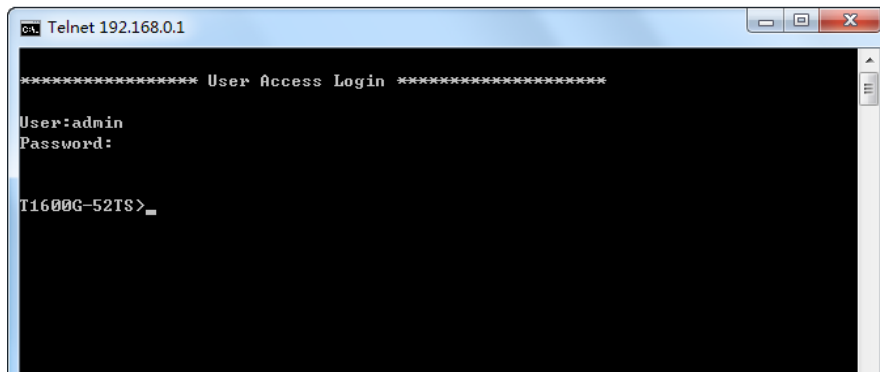



Figure 1-2 Log in the Switch

 **Note:** The first time you log in, change the password to better protect your network and devices.

4. Type in **enable** command and you will enter Privileged EXEC Mode. By default, no password is needed. Later you can set a password for users who want to access the Privileged EXEC Mode.

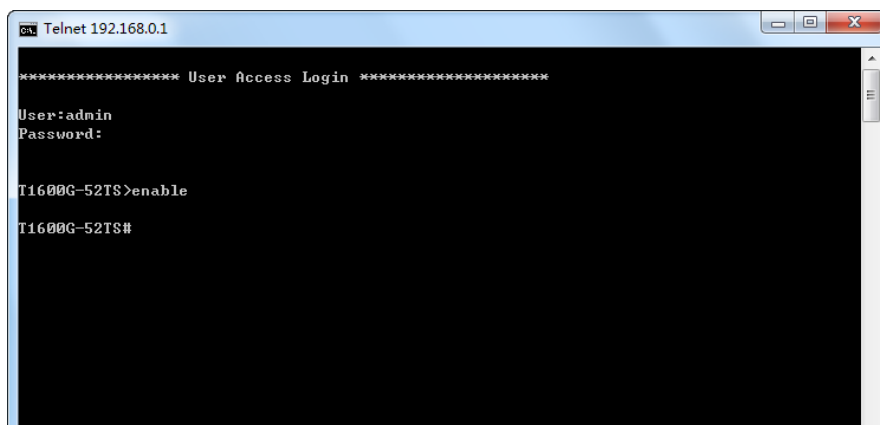


Figure 1-3 Enter into Privileged EXEC Mode

1.1.2 Logon by SSH

To log on by SSH, a Putty client software is recommended. There are two authentication modes to set up an SSH connection:

Password Authentication Mode: It requires username and password, which are both **admin** by default.

Key Authentication Mode: It requires a public key for the switch and a private key for the SSH client software. You can generate the public key and the private key through Putty Key Generator.

 **Note:**

1. Before SSH login, please follow the steps shown in Figure 1-7 to enable the SSH function through Telnet connection.
2. The first time you log in, change the password to better protect your network and devices.

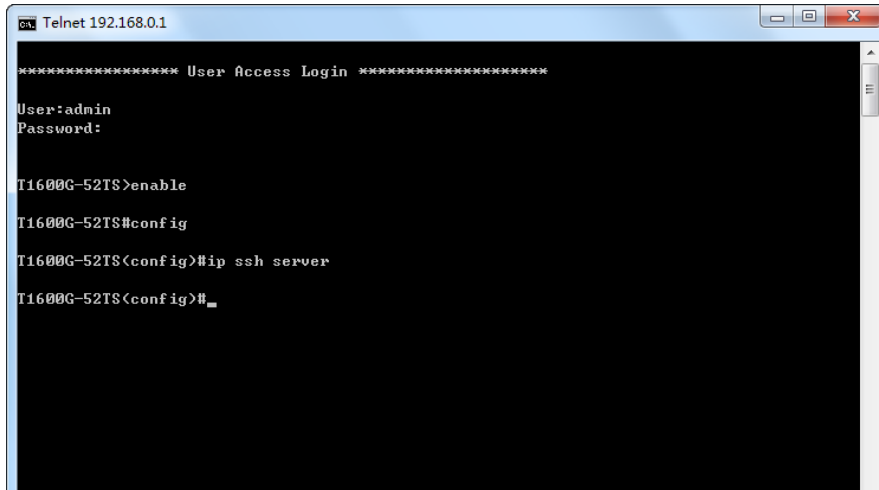


Figure 1-4 Enable SSH function

■ **Password Authentication Mode**

1. Open the software to log on to the interface of PuTTY. Enter the IP address of the switch into **Host Name** field; keep the default value 22 in the **Port** field; select **SSH** as the Connection type.

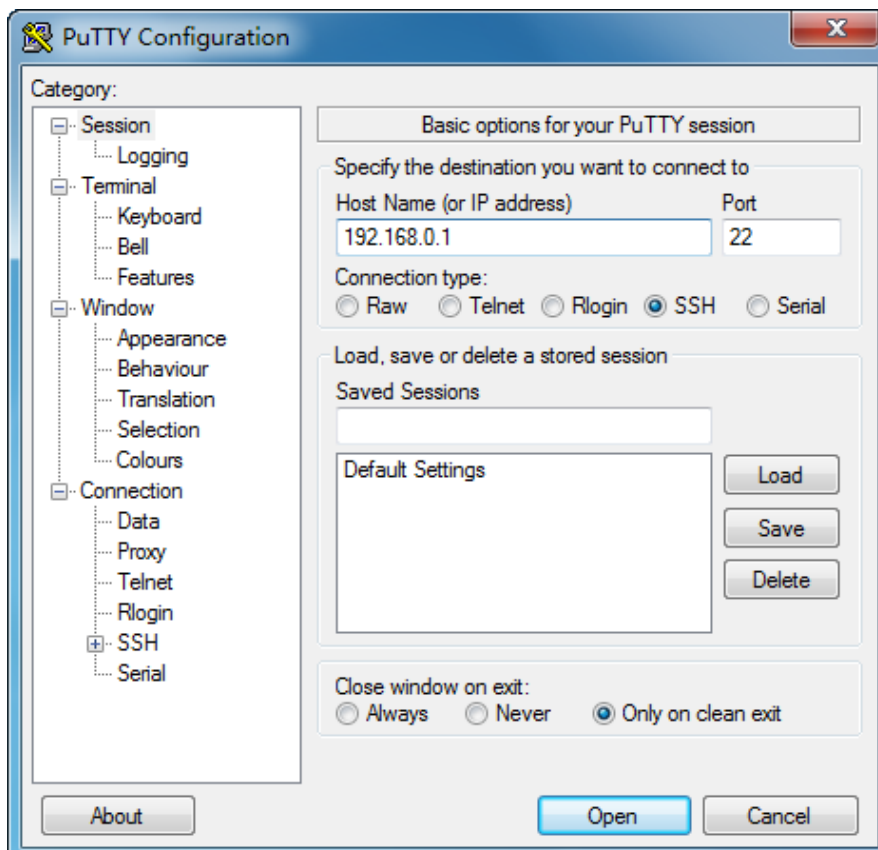


Figure 1-5 SSH Connection Config

2. Click the **Open** button in the above figure to log on to the switch. Enter the login user name and password to log on the switch, and then enter enable to enter Privileged EXEC Mode, so you can continue to configure the switch.

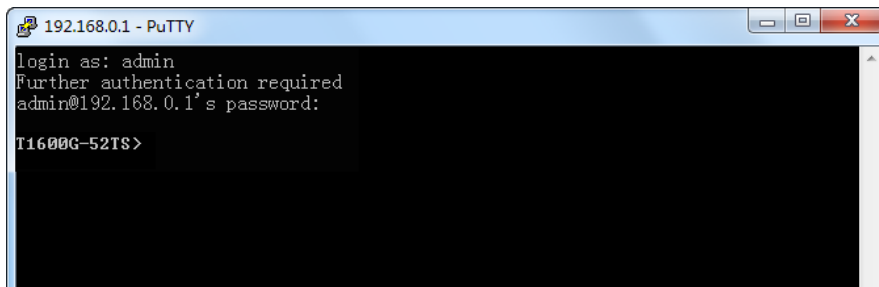


Figure 1-6 Log on the Switch

■ Key Authentication Mode

2. Select the key type and key length, and generate SSH key.

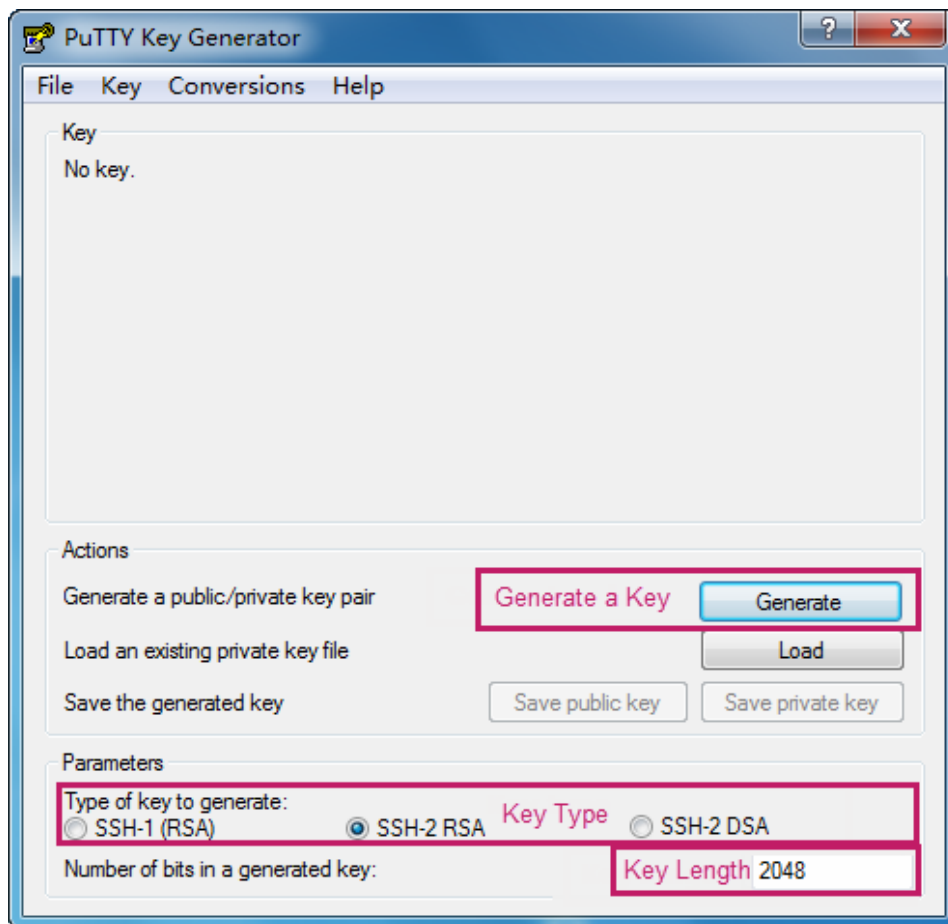


Figure 1-7 Generate SSH Key

! Note:

1. The key length is in the range of 512 to 3072 bits.
2. During the key generation, randomly moving the mouse quickly can accelerate the key generation.

3. After the key is successfully generated, please save the public key and private key to a TFTP server.

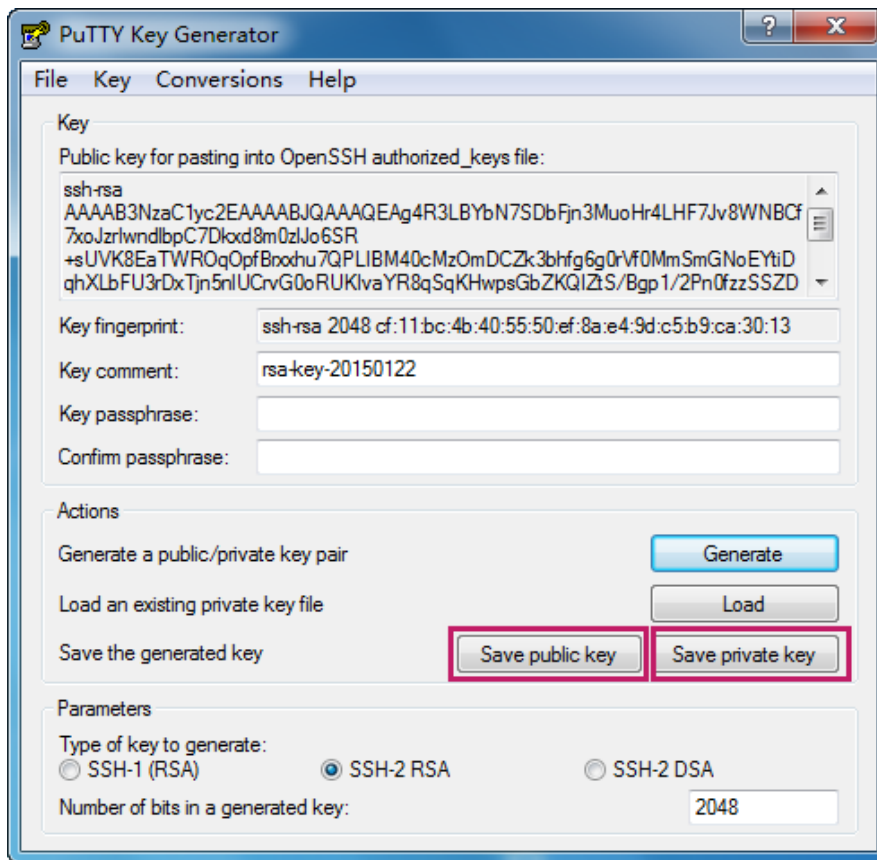


Figure 1-8 Save the Generated Key

4. Log on to the switch by Telnet and download the public key file from the TFTP server to the switch, as the following figure shows:

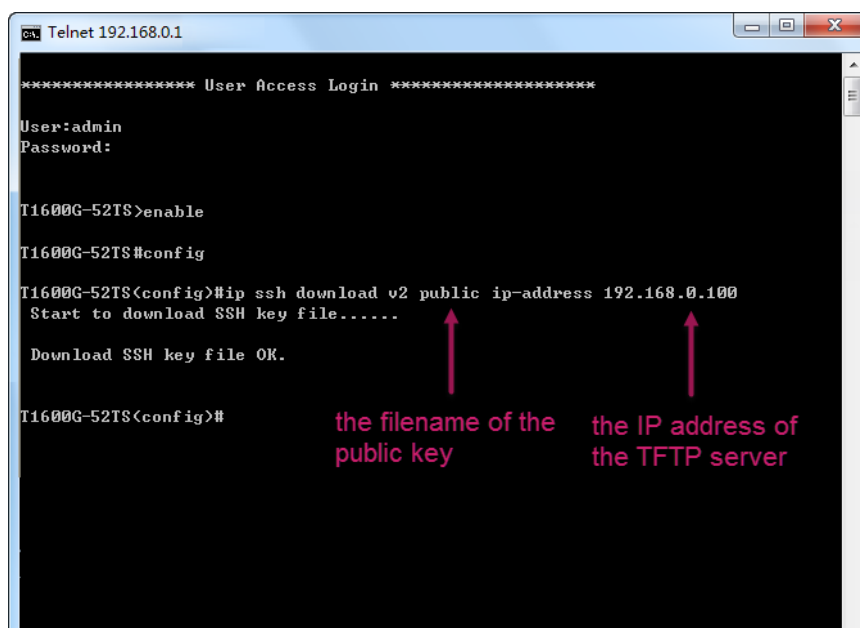


Figure 1-9 Download the Public Key

Note:

1. The key type should accord with the type of the key file.
2. The SSH key downloading can not be interrupted.
5. After the public key is downloaded, please log on to the interface of PuTTY and enter the IP address for login.

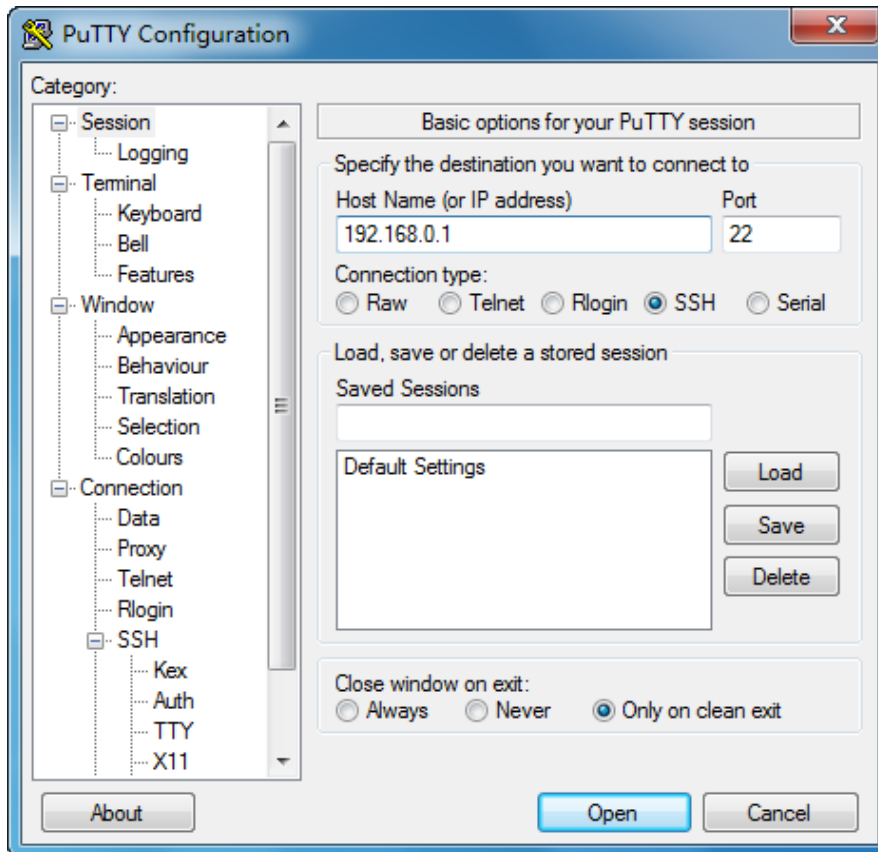


Figure 1-10 SSH Connection Config

6. Click **Browse** to download the private key file to SSH client software and click **Open**.

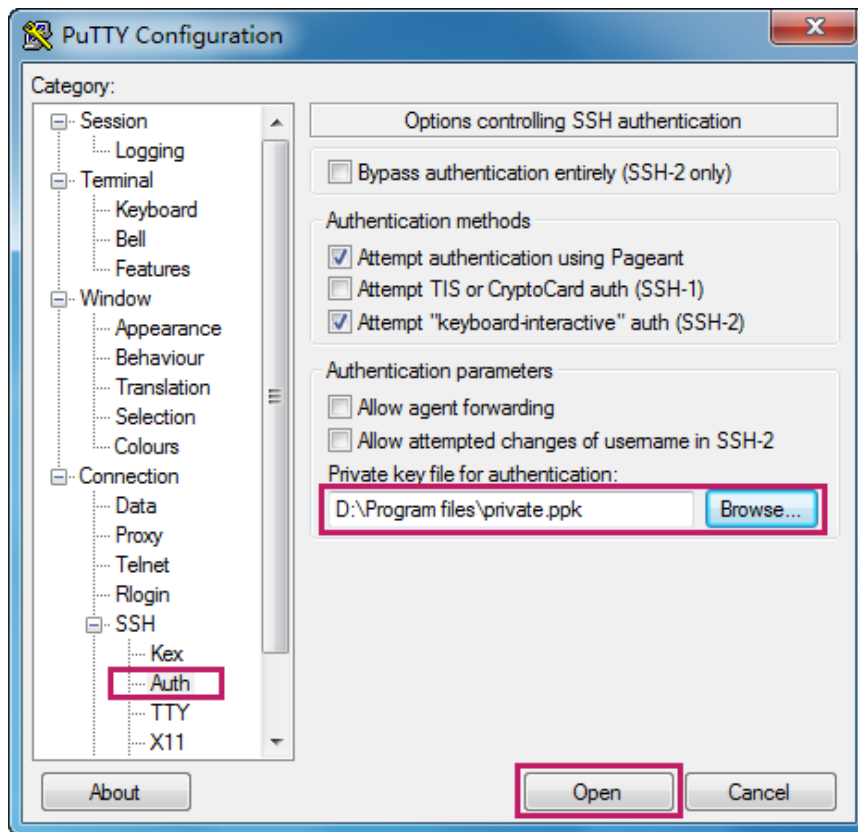


Figure 1-11 Download the Private Key

7. After successful authentication, please enter the login user name. If you log on to the switch without entering password, it indicates that the key has been successfully downloaded.

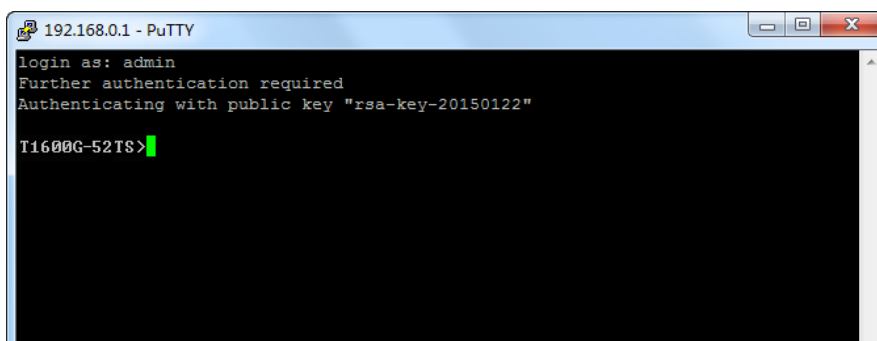


Figure 1-12 Log on the Switch

1.2 CLI Command Modes

The CLI is divided into different command modes: User EXEC Mode, Privileged EXEC Mode, Global Configuration Mode, Interface Configuration Mode and VLAN Configuration Mode.

Interface Configuration Mode can also be divided into Interface Ethernet, Interface link-aggregation and some other modes, which is shown as the following diagram.

The following table gives detailed information about the Accessing path, Prompt of each mode and how to exit the current mode and access the next mode.

Mode	Accessing Path	Prompt	Logout or Access the next mode
User EXEC Mode	Primary mode once it is connected with the switch.	Switch>	Use the exit command to disconnect the switch. Use the enable command to access Privileged EXEC mode.
Privileged EXEC Mode	Use the enable command to enter this mode from User EXEC mode.	Switch#	Enter the disable or the exit command to return to User EXEC mode. Enter configure command to access Global Configuration mode.
Global Configuration Mode	Use the configure command to enter this mode from Privileged EXEC mode.	Switch(config)#	Use the exit or the end command or press Ctrl+Z to return to Privileged EXEC mode. Use the interface gigabitEthernet port or interface range gigabitEthernet port-list command to access interface Configuration mode. Use the vlan vlan-list to access VLAN Configuration mode.
Interface Configuration Mode	Layer 2 Interface: Use the interface gigabitEthernet port , interface port-channel port-channel-id or interface range gigabitEthernet port-list command to enter this mode from Global Configuration mode.	Switch(config-if)# or Switch(config-if-range)#	Use the end command or press Ctrl+Z to return to Privileged EXEC mode. Enter the exit or the # command to return to Global Configuration mode. A port number must be specified in the interface command.

Mode	Accessing Path	Prompt	Logout or Access the next mode
Interface Configuration Mode	<p>Layer 3 Interface: Use the no switchport command to enter Routed Port mode from Interface Configuration mode.</p> <p>Use the interface vlan <i>vlan-id</i> command to enter VLAN Interface mode from Global Configuration mode.</p> <p>Use the interface loopback <i>id</i> command to enter Loopback Interface mode from Global Configuration mode.</p>	<p>Switch (config-if)#</p> <p>or</p> <p>Switch(config-if-range)#</p>	<p>Use the switchport command to switch to the Layer 2 interface mode.</p> <p>Use the end command or press Ctrl+Z to return to Privileged EXEC mode.</p> <p>Enter the exit or the # command to return to Global Configuration mode.</p>
VLAN Configuration Mode	<p>Use the vlan <i>vlan-list</i> command to enter this mode from Global Configuration mode.</p>	<p>Switch (config-vlan)#</p>	<p>Use the end command or press Ctrl+Z to return to Privileged EXEC mode.</p> <p>Enter the exit command or the # command to return to Global configuration mode.</p>

 **Note:**

1. The user is automatically in User EXEC Mode after the connection between the PC and the switch is established by a Telnet/SSH connection.
2. Each command mode has its own set of specific commands. To configure some commands, you should access the corresponding command mode firstly.
 - **Global Configuration Mode:** In this mode, global commands are provided, such as the Spanning Tree, Schedule Mode and so on.
 - **Interface Configuration Mode:** In this mode, users can configure one or several ports, different ports corresponds to different commands
 - a). Interface gigabitEthernet: Configure parameters for an Ethernet port, such as

Duplex-mode, flow control status.

- b). Interface range gigabitEthernet: Configure parameters for several Ethernet ports.
- c). Interface link-aggregation: Configure parameters for a link-aggregation, such as broadcast storm.
- d). Interface range link-aggregation: Configure parameters for multi-trunks.
- e). Interface vlan: Configure parameters for the vlan-port.

- **VLAN Configuration Mode:** In this mode, users can create a VLAN and add a specified port to the VLAN.

3. Some commands are global, that means they can be performed in all modes:

- **show:** Display all information of switch, for example: statistic information, port information, VLAN information.
- **history:** Display the commands history.

1.3 Privilege Restrictions

This switch's security is divided into four privilege levels: User level, Power User level, Operator level and Admin level. You can define username and password pairs, and assign a specific privilege level to each pair. Different privilege levels have access to specified commands, which is illustrated in the **Privilege Requirement** in each command. For details about how to configure username and password pairs, please refer to [user name \(password\)](#) and [user name \(secret\)](#).

Users can enter Privileged EXEC mode from User EXEC mode by using the **enable** command. In default case, no password is needed. In Global Configuration Mode, you can configure password for Admin level by **enable password** command. Once password is configured, you are required to enter it to access Privileged EXEC mode.

1.4 Conventions

1.4.1 PoE Disclaimer

PoE budget calculations are based on laboratory testing. Actual PoE power budget is not guaranteed and will vary as a result of client limitations and environmental factors.

1.4.2 Format Conventions

The following conventions are used in this Guide:

- Items in square brackets [] are optional
- Items in braces {} are required
- Alternative items are grouped in braces and separated by vertical bars. For example: **speed** {10 | 100 | 1000 }
- Bold indicates an unalterable keyword. For example: **show logging**
- Normal Font indicates a constant (several options are enumerated and only one can be selected). For example: **mode** {dynamic | static | permanent}
- Italic Font indicates a variable (an actual value must be assigned). For example: **bridge aging-time** *aging-time*

1.4.3 Special Characters

You should pay attentions to the description below if the variable is a character string:

- These six characters " < > , \ & cannot be input.
- If a blank is contained in a character string, single or double quotation marks should be used, for example 'hello world', "hello world", and the words in the quotation marks will be identified as a string. Otherwise, the words will be identified as several strings.

1.4.4 Parameter Format

Some parameters must be entered in special formats which are shown as follows:

- MAC address must be enter in the format of xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx.
- One or several values can be typed for a port-list or a vlan-list using comma to separate. Use a hyphen to designate a range of values, for instance, 1/0/1, 1/0/3-5, 1/0/7 indicates choosing port 1/0/1, 1/0/3, 1/0/4, 1/0/5, 1/0/7.

Chapter 2 User Interface

2.1 enable

Description

The **enable** command is used to access Privileged EXEC Mode from User EXEC Mode.

Syntax

```
enable
```

Command Mode

User EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

If you have set the password to access Privileged EXEC Mode from User EXEC Mode:

```
Switch>enable
Enter password:
Switch#
```

2.2 service password-encryption

Description

The **service password-encryption** command is used to encrypt the password when the password is defined or when the configuration is written, using the symmetric encryption algorithm. Encryption prevents the password from being readable in the configuration file. To disable the global encryption function, please use **no service password-encryption** command.

Syntax

```
service password-encryption
no service password-encryption
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the global encryption function:

```
Switch(config)# service password-encryption
```

2.3 enable password

Description

The **enable password** command is used to set or change the password for users to access Privileged EXEC Mode from User EXEC Mode. To remove the password, please use **no enable password** command. This command uses the symmetric encryption.

Syntax

```
enable password {[ 0] password | 7 encrypted-password }  
no enable password
```

Parameter

0 — Specify the encryption type. 0 indicates that an unencrypted password will follow. By default, the encryption type is 0.

password — A string with 31 characters at most, which can contain only English letters (case-sensitive), digits and 17 kinds of special characters. The special characters are **!\$%'()*,-./[]_{}|**. By default, it is empty.

7 — Indicates a symmetric encrypted password with fixed length will follow.

encrypted-password — A symmetric encrypted password with fixed length, which you can copy from another switch's configuration file. After the encrypted password is configured, you should use the corresponding unencrypted password if you re-enter this mode.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

If the password you configured here is unencrypted and the global encryption function is enabled in [service password-encryption](#), the password in the configuration file will be displayed in the symmetric encrypted form.

If both the **enable password** and **enable secret** are defined, only the latest configured password will take effect.

Example

Set the super password as "admin" and unencrypted to access Privileged EXEC Mode from User EXEC Mode:

```
Switch(config)#enable password 0 admin
```

2.4 enable secret

Description

The **enable secret** command is used to set a secret password, which is using an MD5 encryption algorithm, for users to access Privileged EXEC Mode from User EXEC Mode. To return to the default configuration, please use **no enable secret** command. This command uses the MD5 encryption.

Syntax

```
enable secret {[0] password | 5 encrypted-password}  
no enable secret
```

Parameter

0 — Specify the encryption type. 0 indicates that an unencrypted password will follow. By default, the encryption type is 0.

password — A string with 31 characters at most, which can contain only English letters (case-sensitive), digits and 17 kinds of special characters. The special characters are **!\$%()*,-./[]_{}.** By default, it is empty. The password in the configuration file will be displayed in the MD5 encrypted form.

5 — Indicates an MD5 encrypted password with fixed length will follow.

encrypted-password — An MD5 encrypted password with fixed length, which you can copy from another switch's configuration file. After the encrypted password is configured, you should use the corresponding unencrypted password if you re-enter this mode.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

If both the **enable password** and **enable secret** are defined, only the latest configured password will take effect.

Example

Set the secret password as "admin" and unencrypted to access Privileged EXEC Mode from User EXEC Mode. The password will be displayed in the encrypted form.

```
Switch(config)#enable secret 0 admin
```

2.5 configure

Description

The **configure** command is used to access Global Configuration Mode from Privileged EXEC Mode.

Syntax

```
configure
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Access Global Configuration Mode from Privileged EXEC Mode:

```
Switch# configure  
Switch (config)#
```


2.6 exit

Description

The **exit** command is used to return to the previous Mode from the current Mode.

Syntax

exit

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Return to Global Configuration Mode from Interface Configuration Mode, and then return to Privileged EXEC Mode:

```
Switch (config-if)# exit
Switch (config)#exit
Switch#
```

2.7 end

Description

The **end** command is used to return to Privileged EXEC Mode.

Syntax

end

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Return to Privileged EXEC Mode from Interface Configuration Mode:

```
Switch (config-if)#end
Switch #
```

2.8 clipaging

Description

The **clipaging** command is used to enable the pause function for the screen display. If you want to display all the related information of the switch at once when using the show command, please use **no clipaging** command.

Syntax

```
clipaging
no clipaging
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Disable the pause function for the screen display:

```
Switch (config)#no clipaging
```

2.9 history

Description

The **history** command is used to show the latest 20 commands you entered in the current mode since the switch is powered.

Syntax

```
history
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Show the commands you have entered in the current mode:

```
Switch (config)# history
1 history
```

2.10 history clear

Description

The **history clear** command is used to clear the commands you have entered in the current mode; therefore, these commands will not be shown next time you use the **history** command.

Syntax

```
history clear
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Clear the commands you have entered in the current mode:

```
Switch (config)#history clear
```

Chapter 3 User Management Commands

User Management commands are used to manage the user's logging information by Web, Telnet or SSH, so as to protect the settings of the switch from being randomly changed.

3.1 user name (password)

Description

The **user name** command is used to add a new user or modify the existed users' information. To delete the existed users, please use **no user name** command. This command uses the symmetric encryption.

Syntax

```
user name name [ privilege admin | operator | power_user | user ] password
{ [ 0 ] password | 7 encrypted-password }
```

```
no user name name
```

Parameter

name —— Type a name for users' login. It contains 16 characters at most, composed of digits, English letters and symbols. No spaces, question marks and double quotation marks are allowed.

admin | operator | power_user | user —— Access level. "admin" means that you can edit, modify and view all the settings of different functions. "operator" means that you can edit, modify and view most of the settings of different functions. "power-user" means that you can edit, modify and view some of the settings of different functions. "user" means that you can only view some of the settings of different functions without the right to edit or modify. It is "admin" by default. For more details about privilege restrictions, please refer to the **Privilege Requirement** part in each command.

0 —— Specify the encryption type. 0 indicates that an unencrypted password will follow. By default, the encryption type is 0.

password —— Users' login password, a string with 6–31 alphanumeric characters (case-sensitive) and symbols. No spaces are allowed.

7 —— Indicates a symmetric encrypted password with fixed length will follow.

encrypted-password —— A symmetric encrypted password with fixed length, which you can copy from another switch's configuration file. After the

encrypted password is configured, you should use the corresponding unencrypted password if you re-enter this mode.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

If the password you configured here is unencrypted and the global encryption function is enabled in [service password-encryption](#), the password in the configuration file will be displayed in the symmetric encrypted form.

If both the **user name (password)** and **user name (secret)** are defined, only the latest configured password will take effect.

Example

Add and enable a new admin user named "tplink", of which the password is "admin" and unencrypted:

```
Switch(config)#user name tplink privilege admin password 0 admin
```

3.2 user name (secret)

Description

The **user name** command is used to add a new user or modify the existed users' information. To delete the existed users, please use **no user name** command. This command uses the MD5 encryption.

Syntax

```
user name name [ privilege admin | operator | power_user | user ] secret { [ 0 ]  
password | 5 encrypted-password }
```

```
no user name name
```

Parameter

name —Type a name for users' login. It contains 16 characters at most, composed of digits, English letters and symbols. No spaces, question marks and double quotation marks are allowed.

admin | operator | power_user | user — Access level. "admin" means that you can edit, modify and view all the settings of different functions. "operator"

means that you can edit, modify and view most of the settings of different functions. "power-user" means that you can edit, modify and view some of the settings of different functions. "user" means that you can only view some of the settings of different functions without the right to edit or modify. It is "admin" by default.

0 — Specify the encryption type. 0 indicates that an unencrypted password will follow. By default, the encryption type is 0.

password —Users' login password, a string with 6–31 alphanumeric characters (case-sensitive) and symbols. No spaces are allowed.

5 — Indicates an MD5 encrypted password with fixed length will follow.

encrypted-password — An MD5 encrypted password with fixed length, which you can copy from another switch's configuration file.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

If both the **user name (password)** and **user name (secret)** are defined, only the latest configured password will take effect.

Example

Add and enable a new admin user named "tplink", of which the password is "admin". The password will be displayed in the encrypted form.

```
Switch (config)#user name tplink privilege admin secret 0 admin
```

3.3 show user account-list

Description

The **show user account-list** command is used to display the information of the current users.

Syntax

```
show user account-list
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the information of the current users:

```
Switch (config)# show user account-list
```

3.4 show user configuration

Description

The **show user configuration** command is used to display the security configuration information of the users, including access-control, max-number and the idle-timeout, etc.

Syntax

```
show user configuration
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the security configuration information of the users:

```
Switch (config)# show user configuration
```

Chapter 4 System Configuration Commands

System Commands can be used to configure the System information and System IP, reboot and reset the switch, upgrade the switch system and other operations.

4.1 system-time manual

Description

The **system-time manual** command is used to configure the system time manually.

Syntax

```
system-time manual time
```

Parameter

time — Set the date and time manually, MM/DD/YYYY-HH:MM:SS. The valid value of the year ranges from 2000 to 2037.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the system mode as manual, and the time is 12/20/2010 17:30:35

```
Switch (config)# system-time manual 12/20/2010-17:30:35
```

4.2 system-time ntp

Description

The **system-time ntp** command is used to configure the time zone and the IP address for the NTP Server. The switch will get UTC automatically if it has connected to an NTP Server.

Syntax

```
system-time ntp { timezone } { ntp-server } { backup-ntp-server }  
{ fetching-rate }
```

Parameter

timezone — Your local time-zone, and it ranges from UTC-12:00 to UTC+13:00.

The detailed information that each time-zone means are displayed as follow:

UTC-12:00 — TimeZone for International Date Line West.

UTC-11:00 — TimeZone for Coordinated Universal Time-11.

UTC-10:00 — TimeZone for Hawaii.

UTC-09:00 — TimeZone for Alaska.

UTC-08:00 — TimeZone for Pacific Time(US Canada).

UTC-07:00 — TimeZone for Mountain Time(US Canada).

UTC-06:00 — TimeZone for Central Time(US Canada).

UTC-05:00 — TimeZone for Eastern Time(US Canada).

UTC-04:30 — TimeZone for Caracas.

UTC-04:00 — TimeZone for Atlantic Time(Canada).

UTC-03:30 — TimeZone for Newfoundland.

UTC-03:00 — TimeZone for Buenos Aires, Salvador, Brasilia.

UTC-02:00 — TimeZone for Mid-Atlantic.

UTC-01:00 — TimeZone for Azores, Cape Verde Is.

UTC — TimeZone for Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London.

UTC+01:00 — TimeZone for Amsterdam, Berlin, Bern, Rome, Stockholm, Vienna.

UTC+02:00 — TimeZone for Cairo, Athens, Bucharest, Amman, Beirut, Jerusalem.

UTC+03:00 — TimeZone for Kuwait, Riyadh, Baghdad.

UTC+03:30 — TimeZone for Tehran.

UTC+04:00 — TimeZone for Moscow, St.Petersburg, Volgograd, Tbilisi, Port Louis.

UTC+04:30 — TimeZone for Kabul.

UTC+05:00 — TimeZone for Islamabad, Karachi, Tashkent.

UTC+05:30 — TimeZone for Chennai, Kolkata, Mumbai, New Delhi.

UTC+05:45 — TimeZone for Kathmandu.

UTC+06:00 — TimeZone for Dhaka, Astana, Ekaterinburg.

UTC+06:30 — TimeZone for Yangon (Rangoon).

UTC+07:00 — TimeZone for Novosibirsk, Bangkok, Hanoi, Jakarta.

UTC+08:00 — TimeZone for Beijing, Chongqing, Hong Kong, Urumqi, Singapore.

UTC+09:00 — TimeZone for Seoul, Irkutsk, Osaka, Sapporo, Tokyo.

UTC+09:30 — TimeZone for Darwin, Adelaide.

UTC+10:00 — TimeZone for Canberra, Melbourne, Sydney, Brisbane.

UTC+11:00 — TimeZone for Solomon Is., New Caledonia, Vladivostok.

UTC+12:00 — TimeZone for Fiji, Magadan, Auckland, Wellington.

UTC+13:00 — TimeZone for Nuku'alofa, Samoa.

ntp-server — The IP address for the Primary NTP Server.

backup-ntp-server—— The IP address for the Secondary NTP Server.

fetching-rate—— Specify the rate fetching time from NTP server.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the system time mode as NTP, the time zone is UTC-12:00, the primary NTP server is 133.100.9.2 and the secondary NTP server is 139.78.100.163, the fetching-rate is 11 hours:

```
Switch(config)# system-time ntp UTC-12:00 133.100.9.2 139.79.100.163 11
```

4.3 system-time dst predefined

Description

The **system-time dst predefined** command is used to select a daylight saving time configuration from the predefined mode. The configuration can be used recurrently. To disable DST function, please use **no system-time dst** command.

Syntax

```
system-time dst predefined [ USA /Australia | Europe | New-Zealand ]
```

```
no system-time dst
```

Parameter

USA /Australia | Europe | New-Zealand —— The mode of daylight saving time. There are 4 options which are USA, Australia, Europe and New-Zealand respectively. The default value is Europe.

Following are the time ranges of each option:

USA —— Second Sunday in March, 02:00 – First Sunday in November, 02:00.

Australia —— First Sunday in October, 02:00 – First Sunday in April, 03:00.

Europe —— Last Sunday in March, 01:00 – Last Sunday in October, 01:00.

New Zealand —— Last Sunday in September, 02:00 – First Sunday in April, 03:00.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the daylight saving time as USA standard:

```
Switch(config)#system-time dst predefined USA
```

4.4 system-time dst date

Description

The **system-time dst date** command is used to configure the one-off daylight saving time. The start date is in the current year by default. The time range of the daylight saving time must shorter than one year, but you can configure it spanning years. To disable DST function, please use **no system-time dst** command.

Syntax

```
system-time dst date {smonth } {sday } {stime } {syear } {emonth } {eday }  
{etime } {eyear } [offset]
```

```
no system-time dst
```

Parameter

smonth—The start month of the daylight saving time. There are 12 values showing as follows: Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun, Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec.

sday— The start day of the daylight saving time, ranging from 1 to 31. Here you should show special attention to February and the differences between a solar month and a lunar month.

stime— The start moment of the daylight saving time, HH:MM.

syear— The start year of the daylight saving time.

emonth— The end month of the daylight saving time. There are 12 values showing as follows: Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun, Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec.

eday— The end day of the daylight saving time, ranging from q to 31. Here you should show special attention to February and the differences between a solar month and a lunar month.

etime— The end moment of the daylight saving time, HH:MM.

eyear— The end year of the daylight saving time.

offset— The number of minutes to add during the daylight saving time. It is 60 minutes by default.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the daylight saving time from zero clock, Apr 1st to zero clock Oct 1st and the offset is 30 minutes in 2015:

```
Switch(config)# system-time dst date Apr 1 00:00 2015 Oct 1 00:00 2015
30
```

4.5 system-time dst recurring

Description

The **system-time dst recurring** command is used to configure the recurring daylight saving time. It can be configured spanning years. To disable DST function, please use **no system-time dst** command.

Syntax

```
system-time dst recurring {sweek} {sday} {smonth} {stime} {eweeek} {eday}
{emonth} {etime} [offset]
```

```
no system-time dst
```

Parameter

sweek—The start week of the daylight saving time. There are 5 values showing as follows: first, second, third, fourth, last.

sday — The start day of the daylight saving time. There are 7 values showing as follows: Sun, Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat.

smonth— The start month of the daylight saving time. There are 12 values showing as follows: Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun, Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec.

stime— The start moment of the daylight saving time, HH:MM.

eweeek —The end week of the daylight saving time. There are 5 values showing as follows: first, second, third, fourth, last.

eday — The end day of the daylight saving time. There are 5 values showing as follows: Sun, Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri, Sat.

emonth— The end month of the daylight saving time. There are 12 values showing as following: Jan, Feb, Mar, Apr, May, Jun, Jul, Aug, Sep, Oct, Nov, Dec.

etime—— The end moment of the daylight saving time, HH:MM.

offset—— The number of minutes to add during the daylight saving time. It is 60 minutes by default.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the daylight saving time from 2:00am, the first Sunday of May to 2:00am, the last Sunday of Oct and the offset is 45 minutes:

```
Switch(config)# system-time dst recurring first Sun May 02:00 last Sun Oct  
02:00 45
```

4.6 hostname

Description

The **hostname** command is used to configure the system name. To clear the system name information, please use **no hostname** command.

Syntax

```
hostname [ hostname ]
```

```
no hostname
```

Parameter

hostname —— System Name. The length of the name ranges from 1 to 32 characters. By default, it is the device name, for example "T1600G-28TS".

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the system name as TPLINK:

```
Switch(config)# hostname TPLINK
```

4.7 location

Description

The **location** command is used to configure the system location. To clear the system location information, please use **no location** command.

Syntax

location [*location*]

no location

Parameter

location — Device Location. It consists of 32 characters at most. It is "SHENZHEN" by default.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the system location as SHENZHEN:

```
Switch(config)# location SHENZHEN
```

4.8 contact-info

Description

The **contact-info** command is used to configure the system contact information. To clear the system contact information, please use **no contact-info** command.

Syntax

contact-info [*contact_info*]

no contact-info

Parameter

contact_info — Contact Information. It consists of 32 characters at most. It is "www.tp-link.com" by default.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the system contact information as www.tp-link.com:

```
Switch(config)# contact-info www.tp-link.com
```

4.9 led (Only for Certain Devices)



Note: Only certain devices support this command.

Description

The **led** command is used to control the LEDs.

Syntax

```
led {on | off}
```

Parameter

on | off— The LEDs are configured as on or off. By default, they are on.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the LED as off:

```
Switch(config)# led off
```

4.10 ip address

Description

This **ip address** command is used to configure the IP address and IP subnet mask for the specified interface manually. The interface type includes: routed port, port-channel interface, loopback interface and VLAN interface.

Syntax

```
ip address { ip-addr } { mask } [ secondary ]
```

```
no ip address [ ip-addr ] [ mask ]
```

Parameter

ip-addr — The IP address of the Layer 3 interface.

mask — The subnet mask of the Layer 3 interface.

secondary — Specify the interface's secondary IP address. If this parameter is omitted here, the configured IP address is the interface's primary address.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create the VLAN interface 2 with the primary IP address as 192.168.1.1/24 and secondary IP address as 192.168.2.1/24:

```
Switch (config)# interface vlan 2
Switch (config-if)# ip address 192.168.1.1 255.255.255.0
Switch (config-if)# ip address 192.168.2.1 255.255.255.0 secondary
```

4.11 ip address-alloc

Description

The **IP address-alloc** command is used to enable the DHCP Client function or the BOOTP Protocol. When this function is enabled, the specified interface will obtain IP from DHCP Server or BOOTP server. To disable the IP obtaining function on the specified interface, please use the **no ip address** command. This command applies to the routed port, the port-channel interface and the VLAN interface.

Syntax

```
ip address-alloc { dhcp | bootp }
```

```
no ip address
```

Parameter

dhcp — Specify the Layer 3 interface to obtain IP address from the DHCP Server.

bootp — Specify the Layer 3 interface to obtain IP address from the BOOTP Server.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCP Client function on the Lay 3 routed port 1/0/1:

```
Switch (config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

```
Switch (config-if)# no switchport
```


```
Switch (config-if)# ip address-alloc dhcp
```

Disable the IP address obtaining function on the VLAN interface 2:

```
Switch (config)# interface vlan 2
```

```
Switch (config-if)# no ip address
```

4.12 controller cloud-based (Only for Certain Devices)

 **Note:** Only certain devices support this command.

Description

The **controller cloud-based** command is used to enable Cloud-Based Controller management. When this feature is enabled, you can further add your devices to your Omada Cloud-Based Controller. To disable the feature, use the **no controller cloud-based** command.

Syntax

```
controller cloud-based
```

```
no controller cloud-based
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

4.13 controller inform-url (Only for Certain Devices)

 **Note:** Only certain devices support this command.

Description

If your switch and Omada SDN Controller are not located on the same subnet, the **controller inform-url** command is used to inform the switch of the controller's URL/IP address. To disable the feature, use the **no controller inform-url** command.

Syntax

controller inform-url { controller-url | controller-ip }

no controller inform-url

Parameter

controller-url — Specify the URL of Omada SDN Controller.

controller-ip — Specify the IP address of Omada SDN Controller.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Inform the switch of the controller whose IP address is 192.168.1.1:

```
Switch (config)# controller inform-url 192.168.1.1
```

4.14 reset

Description

The **reset** command is used to reset the switch's software. After resetting, all configuration of the switch will restore to the factory defaults and your current settings will be lost.

Syntax

reset [except-ip]

Parameter

except-ip —Maintain the IP address when resetting the switch.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Reset all settings of the switch except its IP address:

```
Switch # reset except-ip
```

4.15 service reset-disable

Description

The **service reset-disable** command is used to disable the reset function of the console port or reset button. To enable the reset function, use **no service reset-disable** command. By default, the reset function is enabled.

Syntax

service reset-disable

no service reset-disable

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Disable the reset function of console port or reset button:

```
Switch (config)# service reset-disable
```

4.16 reboot

Description

The **reboot** command is used to reboot the Switch. To avoid damage, please don't turn off the device while rebooting.

Syntax

reboot

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Reboot the switch:

```
Switch # reboot
```

4.17 reboot-schedule

Description

This **reboot-schedule** command is used to configure the switch to reboot at a certain time point. To delete the reboot schedule settings, please use the **reboot-schedule cancel** command.

Syntax

reboot-schedule at *time* [*date*] [**save_before_reboot**]

reboot-schedule in *interval* [**save_before_reboot**]

reboot-schedule cancel

Parameter

time — Specify the time point for the switch to reboot, in the format of hh:mm.

date — Specify the date for the switch to reboot, in the format of DD:MM:YYYY. The date should be within 30 days.

save_before_reboot — Save the configuration file before the switch reboots.

interval — Specify a time period after which the switch reboots. It ranges from 1 to 43200 minutes.

cancel — Delete the reboot schedule settings.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

In the command **reboot-schedule at** *time* [*date*] [**save_before_reboot**], if no date is specified and the time you set here is later than the time that this command is executed, the switch will reboot later that day; otherwise the switch will reboot at the time point the next day.

Example

Specify the switch to save the configuration files and reboot in 200 minutes:

```
Switch (config)# reboot-schedule in 200 save_before_reboot
```

4.18 copy running-config startup-config

Description

The **copy running-config startup-config** command is used to save the current settings.

Syntax

```
copy running-config startup-config
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Save current settings:

```
Switch # copy running-config startup-config
```

4.19 copy startup-config tftp

Description

The **copy startup-config tftp** command is used to backup the configuration file to TFTP server.

Syntax

```
copy startup-config tftp ip-address ip-addr filename name
```

Parameter

ip-addr—— IP Address of the TFTP server. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example 192.168.0.1 or fe80::1234.

name—— Specify the name for the configuration file which would be backup.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Backup the configuration files to TFTP server with the IP 192.168.0.148 and name this file config.cfg:

```
Switch # copy startup-config tftp ip-address 192.168.0.148 filename config
```

Backup the configuration files to TFTP server with the IP fe80::1234 and name this file config.cfg:

```
Switch # copy startup-config tftp ip-address fe80::1234 filename config
```

4.20 copy tftp startup-config

Description

The **copy tftp startup-config** command is used to download the configuration file to the switch from TFTP server.

Syntax

```
copy tftp startup-config ip-address ip-addr filename name
```

Parameter

ip-addr—— IP Address of the TFTP server. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example 192.168.0.1 or fe80::1234.

name—— Specify the name for the configuration file which would be downloaded.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Download the configuration file named as config.cfg to the switch from TFTP server with the IP 192.168.0.148:

```
Switch # copy tftp startup-config ip-address 192.168.0.148 filename config
```

Download the configuration file named as config.cfg to the switch from TFTP server with the IP fe80::1234

```
Switch # copy tftp startup-config ip-address fe80::1234 filename config
```

4.21 copy backup-config tftp

Description

The **copy backup-config tftp** command is used to export the backup configuration file of the switch to TFTP server.

Syntax

```
copy backup-config tftp ip-address ip-addr filename name
```

Parameter

ip-addr—— IP Address of the TFTP server. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example 192.168.0.1 or fe80::1234.

name—— Specify the name for the configuration file which would be exported.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Export the backup configuration file of the switch to the TFTP server with the IP 192.168.0.148 and name the file config.cfg:

```
Switch # copy backup-config tftp ip-address 192.168.0.148 filename config
```

4.22 copy backup-config startup-config

Description

The **copy backup-config startup-config** command is used to replace the startup configuration file using the backup configuration file.

Syntax

```
copy backup-config startup-config
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Replace the startup configuration file using the backup configuration file.:

```
Switch # copy backup-config startup-config
```

4.23 copy running-config backup-config

Description

The **copy running-config backup-config tftp** command is used to save the current running configuration as the backup configuration file.

Syntax

```
copy running-config backup-config
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Save the current running configuration as the backup configuration file.

```
Switch # copy running-config backup-config
```


4.24 copy tftp backup-config

Description

The **copy tftp backup-config** command is used to download the backup configuration file from a TFTP server.

Syntax

Copy tftp backup-config ip-address *ip-addr* filename *name*

Parameter

ip-addr—— IP Address of the TFTP server. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example 192.168.0.1 or fe80::1234.

name—— Specify the name for the configuration file which would be downloaded.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Download the configuration file named config.cfg from the TFTP server with the IP 192.168.0.148:

```
Switch # copy tftp backup-config ip-address 192.168.0.148 filename config
```

4.25 boot application

Description

The **boot application** command is used to configure the image file as startup image or backup image.

Syntax

boot application filename { image1 | image 2 } { startup | backup }

no boot application

Parameter

image1 | image2 —— Specify the image file to be configured. By default, the image1.bin is the startup image and the image2.bin is the backup image.

startup | backup — Specify the property of the image, either startup image or backup image.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the image2.bin as the startup image:

```
Switch (config)# boot application filename image2 startup
```

4.26 boot config

Description

The **boot config** command is used to configure the configuration file as startup configuration or backup configuration.

Syntax

```
boot config filename { config1 | config 2 } { startup | backup }  
no boot application
```

Parameter

config1 | config2 — Specify the configuration file to be configured. By default, the config1.cfg is the startup image and the config2.cfg is the backup image.

startup | backup — Specify the property of the configuration.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the config2.cfg as the startup image:

```
Switch (config)# boot config filename config2 startup
```

4.27 remove backup-image

Description

The **remove backup-image** command is used to delete the backup-image.

Syntax

```
remove backup-image
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Delete the backup image file:

```
Switch # remove backup-image
```

4.28 firmware upgrade

Description

The **firmware upgrade** command is used to upgrade the switch's backup image file via the TFTP server. The uploaded firmware file will take place of the Backup Image, and user can choose whether to reboot the switch with the Backup Image.

Syntax

```
firmware upgrade tftp ip-address ip-addr filename name
```

Parameter

ip-addr — IP Address of the TFTP server. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example 192.168.0.1 or fe80::1234.

name — Specify the name for the firmware file.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Upgrade the switch's backup image file with the file `firmware.bin` in the TFTP server with the IP address `192.168.0.148`, and reboot the switch with this firmware:

```
Switch # firmware upgrade tftp ip-address 192.168.0.148 filename
firmware.bin

It will only upgrade the backup image. Continue? (Y/N):y

Operation OK!

Reboot with the backup image? (Y/N): y
```

Upgrade the switch's backup image file with the file `firmware.bin` in the TFTP server with the IP address `fe80::1234`, but do not reboot the switch:

```
Switch # firmware upgrade tftp ip-address fe80::1234 filename
firmware.bin

It will only upgrade the backup image. Continue? (Y/N):y

Operation OK!

Reboot with the backup image? (Y/N): n
```

4.29 ping

Description

The **ping** command is used to test the connectivity between the switch and one node of the network.

Syntax

```
ping [ ip | ipv6 ] { ip_addr } [ -n count ] [ -l size ] [ -i interval ]
```

Parameter

ip — The type of the IP address for ping test should be IPv4.

ipv6 — The type of the IP address for ping test should be IPv6.

ip_addr — The IP address of the destination node for ping test. If the parameter *ip/ipv6* is not selected, both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example `192.168.0.100` or `fe80::1234`.

-n count — The amount of times to send test data during Ping testing. It ranges from 1 to 10. By default, this value is 4.

-l size — The size of the sending data during ping testing. It ranges from 1 to 1500 bytes. By default, this value is 64.

-i *interval*— The interval to send ICMP request packets. It ranges from 100 to 1000 milliseconds. By default, this value is 1000.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

To test the connectivity between the switch and the network device with the IP 192.168.0.131, please specify the *count* (-l) as 512 bytes and *count* (-i) as 1000 milliseconds. If there is not any response after 8 times' Ping test, the connection between the switch and the network device is failed to establish:

```
Switch # ping 192.168.0.131 -n 8 -l 512
```

To test the connectivity between the switch and the network device with the IP fe80::1234, please specify the *count* (-l) as 512 bytes and *count* (-i) as 1000 milliseconds. If there is not any response after 8 times' Ping test, the connection between the switch and the network device is failed to establish:

```
Switch # ping fe80::1234 -n 8 -l 512
```

4.30 tracert

Description

The **tracert** command is used to test the connectivity of the gateways during its journey from the source to destination of the test data.

Syntax

```
tracert [ ip | ipv6 ] ip_addr [ maxHops ]
```

Parameter

ip — The type of the IP address for tracert test should be IPv4.

ipv6 — The type of the IP address for tracert test should be IPv6.

ip_addr — The IP address of the destination device. If the parameter ip/ipv6 is not selected, both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example 192.168.0.100 or fe80::1234.

maxHops — The maximum number of the route hops the test data can pass though. It ranges from 1 to 30. By default, this value is 4.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Test the connectivity between the switch and the network device with the IP 192.168.0.131. If the destination device has not been found after 20 *maxHops*, the connection between the switch and the destination device is failed to establish:

```
Switch # tracert 192.168.0.131 20
```

Test the connectivity between the switch and the network device with the IP fe80::1234. If the destination device has not been found after 20 *maxHops*, the connection between the switch and the destination device is failed to establish:

```
Switch # tracert fe80::1234 20
```

4.31 show system-info

Description

The **show system-info** command is used to display System Description, Device Name, Device Location, System Contact, Hardware Version, Firmware Version, System Time, Run Time and so on.

Syntax

```
show system-info
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the system information:

```
Switch # show system-info
```

4.32 show image-info

Description

The **show image-info** command is used to display the information of image files in the system.

Syntax

```
show image-info
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the system image files' information:

```
Switch# show image-info
```

4.33 show boot

Description

The **show boot** command is used to display the boot configuration of the system.

Syntax

```
show boot
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the system boot configuration information:

```
Switch# show boot
```

4.34 show running-config

Description

The **show running-config** command is used to display the current operating configurations of the whole system, a specified unit, or a specified port.

Syntax

```
show running-config [unit{all || [exclude keyword] [include keyword] |  
interface {fastEthernet |gigabitEthernet | ten-gigabitEthernet} port}]
```

```
show running-config [all || [exclude keyword] [include keyword] | interface  
{fastEthernet |gigabitEthernet | ten-gigabitEthernet} port]
```

Parameter

unit— Specify the unit number of a switch to show the unit's operating configurations. By default, it is 1.

all— Display all the operating configurations of the whole system or a specified unit.

|— Enable filter to filtrate the configurations. You can use **exclude** and **include** to set the filter rule.

keyword— The filter conditions, such as interface, vlan, and user.

port — Specify the number of the port to show the port's operating configurations.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the current operating configurations only related to the user:

```
Switch# show running-config | include user
```

4.35 show startup-config

Description

The **show startup-config** command is used to display the current configuration saved in the switch. These configuration settings will not be lost the next time you reboot the switch.

Syntax

```
show startup-config
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the saved configuration:

```
Switch# show startup-config
```

4.36 show system-time

Description

The **show system-time** command is used to display the time information of the switch.

Syntax

```
show system-time
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the time information of the switch

```
Switch# show system-time
```

4.37 show system-time dst

Description

The **show system-time dst** command is used to display the DST information of the switch.

Syntax

```
show system-time dst
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DST information of the switch

```
Switch# show system-time dst
```

4.38 show system-time ntp

Description

The **show system-time ntp** command is used to display the NTP mode configuration information.

Syntax

```
show system-time ntp
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the NTP mode configuration information of the switch:

```
Switch# show system-time ntp
```

4.39 show cable-diagnostics interface

Description

The **show cable-diagnostics interface** command is used to display the cable diagnostics of the connected Ethernet Port., which facilitates you to check the connection status of the cable connected to the switch, locate and diagnose the trouble spot of the network.

Syntax

```
show cable-diagnostics interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port }
```

Parameter

port — The number of the port which is selected for Cable test.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Show the cable-diagnostics of port 3:

```
Switch# show cable-diagnostics interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
```

4.40 show cpu-utilization

Description

The **show cpu-utilization** command is used to display the system's CPU utilization in the last 5 seconds/1minute/5minutes.

Syntax

```
show cpu-utilization
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the CPU utilization information of the switch:

```
Switch# show cpu-utilization
```

4.41 show memory-utilization

Description

The **show memory-utilization** command is used to display the current system's memory utilization in the last 5 seconds/1minute/5minutes.

Syntax

```
show memory-utilization
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the memory utilization information of the switch:

```
Switch# show memory-utilization
```

4.42 show controller (Only for Certain Devices)



Note: Only certain devices support this command.

Description

The **show controller** command is used to display the current controller settings and status.

Syntax

```
show controller
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the current controller settings and status:

```
Switch# show controller
```

Chapter 5 EEE Configuration Commands

EEE (Energy Efficient Ethernet) is used to save power consumption of the switch during periods of low data activity. You can simply enable this feature on ports to allow power reduction.

5.1 eee

Description

The **eee** command is used to enable EEE on the port. To disable EEE on the port, please use **no eee** command.

Syntax

eee

no eee

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable EEE on port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#eee
```

5.2 show interface eee

Description

The **show interface eee** command is used to display the EEE configuration on each port.

Syntax

```
show interface eee [ fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |
ten-gigabitEthernet port]
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the EEE configuration of each port

```
Switch# show interface eee
```

Chapter 6 SDM Template Commands

This chapter describes how to configure the Switch Database Management (SDM) templates to allocate hardware resources on the switch for different uses.

6.1 sdm prefer

Description

The **sdm prefer** command is used to configure the SDM template. The SDM template is used to allocate system resources to best support the features being used in your application. To return to use the default template, please use the **sdm prefer default** command. The template change will take effect after a reboot.

Syntax

```
sdm prefer { default | enterpriseV4 | enterpriseV6 }
```

Parameter

default — Specify the SDM template used in the switch as “default”.

enterpriseV4 — Specify the SDM template used in the switch as “enterpriseV4”.

enterpriseV6 — Specify the SDM template used in the switch as “enterpriseV6”.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the SDM template as enterpriseV4:

```
Switch(config)# sdm prefer enterpriseV4
```

6.2 show sdm prefer

Description

The **show sdm prefer** command is used to display resource allocation of the current SDM template in use, or the SDM templates that can be used.

Syntax

```
show sdm prefer { used | default | enterpriseV4 | enterpriseV6 }
```

Parameter

used — Display the resource allocation of the template currently in use, and the template that will become active after a reboot.

default — Display the resource allocation of the default template.

enterpriseV4 — Display the resource allocation of the enterpriseV4 template. **enterpriseV6** — Display the resource allocation of the enterpriseV6 template.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the resource allocation of the template currently in use, and the template that will become active after a reboot:

```
Switch(config)#show sdm prefer used
```


Chapter 7 Time Range Commands

With this feature, you can configure a time range and bind it to a PoE port or an ACL rule.

7.1 time-range

Description

The **time-range** command is used to create time-range entry for the switch and enter Time-range Create Configuration Mode. After a time-range entry is created, you need to specify the date and time. A time-range can implement multiple time-ranges simultaneously as long as they do not conflict with each other. To delete the corresponding time-range configuration, please use **no time-range** command.

Syntax

time-range *name*

no time-range *name*

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Parameter

name—— The time-range name, ranging from 1 to 16 characters.

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create a time-range named "tRange1" for the switch:

```
Switch(config)# time-range tRange1
```

7.2 absolute

Description

The **absolute** command is used to create an absolute time-range for the time-range of the switch. To delete the corresponding absolute time-range configuration, please use **no absolute** command.

Syntax

absolute from *start-date* **to** *end-date*

no absolute [*index*]

Parameter

start-date — The start date in Absoluteness Mode, in the format of MM/DD/YYYY.

end-date — The end date in Absoluteness Mode, in the format of MM/DD/YYYY.

Command Mode

Time-Range Create Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create an absolute time-range for the switch and specify the date extending from May 5th, 2017 through Oct. 5th, 2017:

```
Switch(config)#time-range tRange1
```

```
Switch(config-time-range)#absolute from 05/05/2017 to 10/05/2017
```

7.3 periodic

Description

The **periodic** command is used to create a periodic mode time-range for the time-range of the switch. To delete the corresponding periodic mode time-range configuration, please use **no periodic** command.

Syntax

periodic start *start-time* **end** *end-time* **day-of-the-week** *week-day*

no periodic [*index*]

Parameter

start-time — Specify the start time in the format of HH:MM

end-time — Specify the end time in the format of HH:MM

week-day — In the format of 1-3, 6, daily, off-day, or working-day. For example, 1-3,6 represents Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Saturday; daily represents every day; off-day represents the weekends; working-day represents the working days.

Command Mode

Time-Range Create Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the time-range tSeg1 with time from 8:30 to 12:00 at weekends:

```
Switch(config)#time-range tSeg1
Switch(config-time-range)#periodic start 08:30 end 12:00
day-of-the-week 6-7
```

7.4 holiday (time-range mode)

Description

The **holiday** command is used to create holiday mode time-range for the time-range of the switch. When the holiday which is excluded from time-range occurs, the switch will not supply power.

Syntax

```
holiday { exclude | include }
```

Parameter

exclude——The time range will not take effect on holiday.

include—— The time range will take effect on holiday.

Command Mode

Time-Range Create Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create a time-range entry named "tRange3" and configure time-range to exclude the holiday:

```
Switch(config)#time-range tRange3
Switch(config-time-range)#holiday exclude
```

7.5 holiday

Description

The **holiday** command is used to create holiday for the switch. To delete the corresponding holiday configuration, please use **no holiday** command.

Syntax

holiday *name* **start-date** *start-date* **end-date** *end-date*

no holiday *name*

Parameter

name — The holiday name, ranging from 1 to 16 characters.

start-date — The start date of the holiday, in the format of MM/DD, for instance, 05/01.

end-date — The end date of the holiday, in the format of MM/DD, for instance, 05/01.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create a holiday named "holiday1" and configure the start date as October 1st and the end date as October 3rd:

```
Switch(config)# holiday holiday1 start-date 10/01 end-date 10/03
```

7.6 show holiday

Description

The **show holiday** command is used to display the defined holiday.

Syntax

show holiday

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the defined holiday:

```
Switch# show holiday
```

7.7 show time-range

Description

The **show time-range** command is used to display the defined time-range.

Syntax

```
show time-range [ time-range-name ]
```

Parameter

time-range-name — Specify the time range name with 1 to 16 characters.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the defined time-range:

```
Switch# show time-range
```

Chapter 8 Port Configuration Commands

Ethernet Configuration Commands can be used to configure the Bandwidth Control, Negotiation Mode and Storm Control for Ethernet ports.

8.1 interface gigabitEthernet

Description

The **interface gigabitEthernet** command is used to enter the Interface gigabitEthernet Configuration Mode and configure the corresponding Gigabit Ethernet port.

Syntax

```
interface gigabitEthernet port
```

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

To enter the Interface gigabitEthernet Configuration Mode and configure port 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

8.2 interface range gigabitEthernet

Description

The **interface range gigabitEthernet** command is used to enter the interface range gigabitEthernet Configuration Mode and configure multiple Gigabit Ethernet ports at the same time.

Syntax

interface range gigabitEthernet *port-list*

Parameter

port-list—— The list of Ethernet ports.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

Command in the **Interface Range gigabitEthernet** Mode is executed independently on all ports in the range. It does not affect the execution on the other ports at all if the command results in an error on one port.

Example

To enter the Interface range gigabitEthernet Configuration Mode, and configure ports 1, 2, 3, 6, 7 and 9 at the same time by adding them to one port-list:

```
Switch(config)# interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/1-3,1/0/6-7,1/0/9
```

8.3 description

Description

The **description** command is used to add a description to the Ethernet port. To clear the description of the corresponding port, please use **no description** command.

Syntax

description *string*

no description

Parameter

string—— Content of a port description, ranging from 1 to 16 characters.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add a description Port_5 to port 1/0/5:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
Switch(config-if)# description Port_5
```

8.4 shutdown

Description

The **shutdown** command is used to disable an Ethernet port. To enable this port again, please use **no shutdown** command.

Syntax

shutdown

no shutdown

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Disable port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# shutdown
```


8.5 flow-control

Description

The **flow-control** command is used to enable the flow-control function for a port. To disable the flow-control function for this corresponding port, please use **no flow-control** command. With the flow-control function enabled, the Ingress Rate and Egress Rate can be synchronized to avoid packet loss in the network.

Syntax

flow-control

no flow-control

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the flow-control function for port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# flow-control
```

8.6 duplex

Description

The **duplex** command is used to configure the Duplex Mode for an Ethernet port. To return to the default configuration, please use **no duplex** command.

Syntax

duplex { auto | full | half }

no duplex

Parameter

auto | full | half — The duplex mode of the Ethernet port. There are three options: auto-negotiation mode, full-duplex mode and half-duplex mode. By default, the Gigabit Ethernet port is auto-negotiation mode.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the Duplex Mode as full-duplex for port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# duplex full
```

8.7 jumbo-size

Description

The **jumbo-size** command is used to specify the size of jumbo frames.

Syntax

jumbo-size *size*

Parameter

size — The value of jumbo frames. It ranges from 1518 to 9216 bytes, and the default is 1518 bytes.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Globally configure the size of jumbo frames as 9216:

```
Switch(config)# jumbo-size 9216
```

8.8 speed

Description

The **speed** command is used to configure the Speed Mode for an Ethernet port. To return to the default configuration, please use **no speed** command.

Syntax

speed { 10 | 100 | 1000 | auto }

no speed

Parameter

10 | 100 | 1000 | auto — The speed mode of the Ethernet port. There are four options: 10Mbps, 100Mbps, 1000Mbps and Auto negotiation mode (default).

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the Speed Mode as 100Mbps for port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# speed 100
```

8.9 serdes-mode

Description

The **serdes-mode** command is used to configure the SFP ports to collocate with two kinds of fiber module.

Syntax

serdes-mode {1000bx | sgmii }

Parameter

1000bx — The SFP port can collocate with normal optical module.

sgmii — The SFP port can collocate with electrical interface module.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure port 1/0/26 to collocate with electrical interface modules:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/26
Switch(config-if)# serdes-mode sgmi
```

8.10 clear counters

Description

The **clear counters** command is used to clear the statistics information of all the Ethernet ports and port channels.

Syntax

clear counters

clear counters interface [**gigabitEthernet** *port*] [**port-channel** *port-channel-id*]

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Clear the statistic information of all ports and port channels:

```
Switch(config)# clear counters
```

8.11 show interface status

Description

The **show interface status** command is used to display the connection status of the Ethernet port/port channel.

Syntax

show interface status [**gigabitEthernet** *port*] [**port-channel** *port-channel-id*]

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel..

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the connection status of all ports and port channels:

```
Switch(config)# show interface status
```

Display the connection status of port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)# show interface status gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

8.12 show interface counters

Description

The **show interface counters** command is used to display the statistics information of all ports/port channels.

Syntax

```
show interface counters [ gigabitEthernet port ] [ port-channel  
port-channel-id]
```

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the statistics information of all Ethernet ports and port channels:

```
Switch(config)# show interface counters
```

Display the statistics information of port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# show interface counters gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

8.13 show interface configuration

Description

The **show interface configuration** command is used to display the configurations of all ports and port channels, including Port-status, Flow Control, Negotiation Mode and Port-description.

Syntax

```
show interface configuration [ gigabitEthernet port ] [ port-channel port-channel-id ]
```

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configurations of all Ethernet ports and port channels:

```
Switch(config)# show interface configuration
```

Display the configurations of port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# show interface configuration gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

Chapter 9 Port Isolation Commands

Port Isolation provides a method of restricting traffic flow to improve the network security by forbidding the port to forward packets to the ports that are not on its forwarding port list.

9.1 port isolation

Description

The **port isolation** command is used to configure the forward port/port channel list of a port/port channel, so that this port/port channel can only communicate with the ports/port channels on its list. To delete the corresponding configuration, please use **no port isolation** command.

Syntax

```
port isolation { [ fa-forward-list fa-forward-list ] [ gi-forward-list  
gi-forward-list ] [ po-forward-list po-forward-list ] [ te-forward-list  
te-forward-list ] }
```

```
no port isolation
```

Parameter

fa-forward-list / *gi-forward-list* / *te-forward-list* — The list of Ethernet ports.
po-forward-list — The list of port channels.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set port 1, 2, 4 and port channel 2 to the forward list of port 1/0/5:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5  
Switch(config-if)# port isolation gi-forward-list 1/0/1-2,1/0/4  
po-forward-list 2
```

Set all Ethernet ports and port channels to forward list of port 1/0/2, namely restore to the default setting:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

9.2 show port isolation interface

Description

The **show port isolation interface** command is used to display the forward port list of a port/port channel.

Syntax

```
show port isolation interface [fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id]
```

Parameter

port — The number of Ethernet port you want to show its forward port list, in the format of 1/0/2.

port-channel-id — The ID of port channel you want to show its forward port list, ranging from 1 to 6.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the forward-list of port 1/0/2:

```
Switch# show port isolation interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

Display the forward-list of all Ethernet ports and port channels:

```
Switch# show port isolation interface
```


Chapter 10 Loopback Detection Commands

With loopback detection feature enabled, the switch can detect loops using loopback detection packets. When a loop is detected, the switch will display an alert or further block the corresponding port according to the configuration.

10.1 loopback-detection (global)

Description

The **loopback-detection** command is used to enable the loopback detection function globally. To disable it, please use **no loopback detection** command.

Syntax

loopback-detection
no loopback-detection

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the loopback detection function globally:

```
Switch(config)# loopback-detection
```

10.2 loopback-detection interval

Description

The **loopback-detection interval** command is used to define the interval of sending loopback detection packets from switch ports to network, aiming at detecting network loops periodically.

Syntax

loopback-detection interval *interval-time*

Parameter

interval-time — The interval of sending loopback detection packets. It ranges from 1 to 1000 seconds. By default, this value is 30.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the interval-time as 50 seconds:

```
Switch(config)# loopback-detection interval 50
```

10.3 loopback-detection recovery-time

Description

The **loopback-detection recovery-time** command is used to configure the time after which the blocked port would automatically recover to normal status.

Syntax

```
loopback-detection recovery-time recovery-time
```

Parameter

recovery-time — The time after which the blocked port would automatically recover to normal status, and the loopback detection would restart. It ranges from 2 to 1000000 seconds. By default, this value is 90.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the recovery-time as 70 seconds:

```
Switch(config)# loopback-detection recovery-time 70
```

10.4 loopback-detection (interface)

Description

The **loopback-detection** command is used to enable the loopback detection function of the specified port. To disable it, please use **no loopback-detection** command.

Syntax

```
loopback-detection  
no loopback-detection
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet | interface range gigabitEthernet | interface port-channel | interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the loopback detection function of ports 1-3:

```
Switch(config)# interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/1-3  
Switch(Config-if-range)# loopback-detection
```

10.5 loopback-detection config process-mode

Description

The **loopback-detection config process-mode** command is used to configure the process-mode for the ports by which the switch copes with the detected loops. You also need to configure the recovery mode to remove the block status of the port or VLAN when the process-mode is Port Based or VLAN Based.

Syntax

```
loopback-detection config process-mode { alert | port-based | vlan-based }  
recovery-mode { auto | manual }
```

Parameter

alert — When a loop is detected, the switch will send a trap message and generate an entry on the log file. It is the default setting.

port-based — When a loop is detected, the switch will send a trap message and generate an entry on the log file. In addition, the switch will block the port

on which the loop is detected and no packets can pass through the port.

vlan-based — When a loop is detected, the switch will send a trap message and generate an entry on the log file. In addition, the switch will block the VLAN in which the loop is detected and only the packets of the blocked VLAN cannot pass through the port.

auto — Block status can be automatically removed after recovery time.

manual — Block status can only be removed manually.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet | interface range gigabitEthernet | interface port-channel | interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the loopback detection process-mode as port-based, and configure the recovery mode as manual for port 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# loopback-detection config process-mode port-based
recovery-mode manual
```

10.6 loopback-detection recover

Description

The **loopback-detection recover** command is used to remove the block status of selected ports, recovering the blocked ports to normal status,

Syntax

loopback-detection recover

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet | interface range gigabitEthernet | interface port-channel | interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Recover the blocked port 1/0/2 to normal status:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# loopback-detection recover
```

10.7 show loopback-detection global

Description

The **show loopback-detection global** command is used to display the global configuration of loopback detection function such as loopback detection global status, loopback detection interval and loopback detection recovery time.

Syntax

```
show loopback-detection global
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the global configuration of loopback detection function:

```
Switch# show loopback-detection global
```

10.8 show loopback-detection interface

Description

The **show loopback-detection interface** command is used to display the configuration of loopback detection function and the status of the specified Ethernet port.

Syntax

```
show loopback-detection interface [ gigabitEthernet port | port-channel  
lagid] [ detail ]
```

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number.

lagid—— The number of LAG, ranging from 1 to 14.

detail —— Displays the loop status and block status of the VLAN which the specified port belongs to.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration of loopback detection function and the status of all ports:

```
Switch# show loopback-detection interface
```

Display the configuration of loopback detection function and the status of port 5:

```
Switch# show loopback-detection interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
```

Chapter 11 Etherchannel Commands

Etherchannel Commands are used to configure LAG and LACP function.

LAG (Link Aggregation Group) is to combine a number of ports together to make a single high-bandwidth data path, which can highly extend the bandwidth. The bandwidth of the LAG is the sum of bandwidth of its member port.

LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) is defined in IEEE802.3ad and enables the dynamic link aggregation and disaggregation by exchanging LACP packets with its partner. The switch can dynamically group similarly configured ports into a single logical link, which will highly extend the bandwidth and flexibly balance the load.

11.1 channel-group

Description

The **channel-group** command is used to add a port to the EtherChannel Group and configure its mode. To delete the port from the EtherChannel Group, please use **no channel-group** command.

Syntax

channel-group *num* **mode** { on | active | passive }

no channel-group

Parameter

num—— The number of the EtherChannel Group, ranging from 1 to 14.

on —— Enable the static LAG.

active —— Enable the active LACP mode.

passive —— Enable the passive LACP mode.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add ports 2-4 to EtherChannel Group 1 and enable the static LAG:

```
Switch(config)# interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/2-4
Switch(config-if-range)# channel-group 1 mode on
```

11.2 port-channel load-balance

Description

The **port-channel load-balance** command is used to configure the Aggregate Arithmetic for LAG. To return to the default configurations, please use **no port-channel load-balance** command.

Syntax

```
port-channel load-balance { src-mac | dst-mac | src-dst-mac | src-ip | dst-ip |
src-dst-ip }
```

```
no port-channel load-balance
```

Parameter

src-mac — The source MAC address. When this option is selected, the Aggregate Arithmetic will be based on the source MAC address of the packets.

dst-mac — The destination MAC address. When this option is selected, the Aggregate Arithmetic will be based on the destination MAC address of the packets.

src-dst-mac — The source and destination MAC address. When this option is selected, the Aggregate Arithmetic will be based on the source and destination MAC addresses of the packets. The Aggregate Arithmetic for LAG is "src-dst-mac" by default.

src-ip — The source IP address. When this option is selected, the Aggregate Arithmetic will be based on the source IP address of the packets.

dst-ip — The destination IP address. When this option is selected, the Aggregate Arithmetic will be based on the destination IP address of the packets.

src-dst-ip — The source and destination IP address. When this option is selected, the Aggregate Arithmetic will be based on the source and destination IP addresses of the packets.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the Aggregate Arithmetic for LAG as "src-dst-ip":

```
Switch(config)# port-channel load-balance src-dst-ip
```

11.3 lacp system-priority

Description

The **lacp system-priority** command is used to configure the LACP system priority globally. To return to the default configurations, please use **no lacp system-priority** command.

Syntax

```
lacp system-priority pri
```

```
no lacp system-priority
```

Parameter

pri— The system priority, ranging from 0 to 65535. It is 32768 by default.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the LACP system priority as 1024 globally:

```
Switch(config)# lacp system-priority 1024
```

11.4 lacp port-priority

Description

The **lacp port-priority** command is used to configure the LACP port priority for specified ports. To return to the default configurations, please use **no lacp port-priority** command.

Syntax

```
lacp port-priority pri  
no lacp port-priority
```

Parameter

pri—— The port priority, ranging from 0 to 65535. It is 32768 by default.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the LACP port priority as 1024 for ports 1-3:

```
Switch(config)# interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/1-3  
Switch(config-if-range)# lacp port-priority 1024
```

Configure the LACP port priority as 2048 for port 4:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/4  
Switch(config-if)# lacp port-priority 2048
```

11.5 show etherchannel

Description

The **show etherchannel** command is used to display the EtherChannel information.

Syntax

```
show etherchannel [ channel-group-num ] { detail | summary }
```

Parameter

channel-group-num — The EtherChannel Group number, ranging from 1 to 14. By default, it is empty, and will display the information of all EtherChannel Groups.

detail — The detailed information of EtherChannel.

summary — The EtherChannel information in summary.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the detailed information of EtherChannel Group 1:

```
Switch(config)# show etherchannel 1 detail
```

11.6 show etherchannel load-balance

Description

The **show etherchannel load-balance** command is used to display the Aggregate Arithmetic of LAG.

Syntax

```
show etherchannel load-balance
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the Aggregate Arithmetic of LAG:

```
Switch(config)# show etherchannel load-balance
```

11.7 show lacp

Description

The **show lacp** command is used to display the LACP information for a specified EtherChannel Group.

Syntax

```
show lacp [ channel-group-num ] { internal /neighbor }
```

Parameter

channel-group-num — The EtherChannel Group number, ranging from 1 to 14. By default, it is empty, and will display the information of all LACP groups.

internal — The internal LACP information.

neighbor — The neighbor LACP information.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the internal LACP information of EtherChannel Group 1:

```
Switch(config)# show lacp 1 internal
```

11.8 show lacp sys-id

Description

The **show lacp sys-id** command is used to display the LACP system priority globally.

Syntax

```
show lacp sys-id
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the LACP system priority:

```
Switch(config)# show lacp sys-id
```

Chapter 12 MAC Address Commands

MAC Address configuration can improve the network security by configuring the Port Security and maintaining the address information by managing the Address Table.

12.1 mac address-table static

Description

The **mac address-table static** command is used to add the static MAC address entry. To remove the corresponding entry, please use **no mac address-table static** command. The static address can be added or removed manually, independent of the aging time. In the stable networks, the static MAC address entries can facilitate the switch to reduce broadcast packets and enhance the efficiency of packets forwarding remarkably.

Syntax

```
mac address-table static mac-addr vid vid interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port }
```

```
no mac address-table static mac-addr vid vid interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port }
```

Parameter

mac-addr—The MAC address of the entry you desire to add.

vid—The VLAN ID number of your desired entry. It ranges from 1 to 4094.

port—The Ethernet port number of your desired entry.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add a static Mac address entry to bind the MAC address 00:02:58:4f:6c:23, VLAN1 and port 1 together:

```
Switch(config)# mac address-table static 00:02:58:4f:6c:23 vid 1 interface  
gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

12.2 no mac address-table dynamic

Description

The **no mac address-table dynamic** command is used to delete the specified dynamic MAC address, or dynamic MAC addresses based on the VLAN or the port.

Syntax

```
no mac address-table dynamic { mac-addr | vid vid | interface {fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port } }
```

Parameter

mac-addr——The MAC address you desire to delete.

vid——The VLAN ID on which you desire to delete MAC addresses.

port——The Ethernet port on which you desire to delete MAC addresses.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Delete the MAC addresses on VLAN 1:

```
Switch(config)# no mac address-table dynamic vid 1
```

12.3 mac address-table aging-time

Description

The **mac address-table aging-time** command is used to configure aging time for the dynamic address. To return to the default configuration, please use **no mac address-table aging-time** command.

Syntax

```
mac address-table aging-time aging-time  
no mac address-table aging-time
```

Parameter

aging-time —— The aging time for the dynamic address. The value of it can be 0 or ranges from 10 to 630 seconds. When 0 is entered, the Auto Aging function is disabled. It is 300 by default.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the aging time as 500 seconds:

```
Switch(config)# mac address-table aging-time 500
```

12.4 mac address-table filtering

Description

The **mac address-table filtering** command is used to add the filtering address entry. To delete the corresponding entry, please use **no mac address-table filtering** command. The filtering address function is to forbid the undesired package to be forwarded. The filtering address can be added or removed manually, independent of the aging time.

Syntax

```
mac address-table filtering mac-addr vid vid
```

```
no mac address-table filtering {[ mac-addr] [vid vid]}
```

Parameter

mac-addr— The MAC address to be filtered.

vid— The corresponding VLAN ID of the MAC address. It ranges from 1 to 4094.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add a filtering address entry of which VLAN ID is 1 and MAC address is 00:1e:4b:04:01:5d:

```
Switch(config)# mac address-table filtering 00:1e:4b:04:01:5d vid 1
```


12.5 mac address-table max-mac-count

Description

The **mac address-table max-mac-count** command is used to configure the Port Security. To return to the default configurations, please use **no mac address-table max-mac-count** command. Port Security is to protect the switch from the malicious MAC address attack by limiting the maximum number of the MAC addresses that can be learned on the port. The port with Port Security feature enabled will learned the MAC address dynamically. When the learned MAC address number reaches the maximum, the port will stop learning. Therefore, the other devices with the MAC address unlearned cannot access to the network via this port.

Syntax

```
mac address-table max-mac-count { [ max-number num] [ mode { dynamic | static | permanent } ] [ status { forward | drop | disable } ] [ exceed-max-learned enable | disable ] }  
no mac address-table max-mac-count [ max-number | mode | status ]
```

Parameter

num — The maximum number of MAC addresses that can be learned on the port. It ranges from 0 to 64. By default, this value is 64.

dynamic | static | permanent — Learn mode for MAC addresses. There are three modes, including Dynamic mode, Static mode and Permanent mode. When Dynamic mode is selected, the learned MAC address will be deleted automatically after the aging time. When Static mode is selected, the learned MAC address will be out of the influence of the aging time and can only be deleted manually. The learned entries will be cleared after the switch is rebooted. When permanent mode is selected, the learned MAC address will be out of the influence of the aging time and can only be deleted manually too. However, the learned entries will be saved even the switch is rebooted.

status — Select the action to be taken when the number of the MAC addresses reaches the maximum learning number on the port. By default, this function is disabled.

- forward: The packets will be forward but not be learned when learned MAC number exceeds the maximum MAC address number on this port.
- drop: The packets will be dropped when learned MAC number exceeds the maximum MAC address number on this port.
- disable: The MAC address threshold on this port is disabled.

new-mac-learned enable | disable — Enable/Disable the new-mac-learned notification on this port. With this feature enabled, a SNMP notification is generated and sent to the network management system (NMS) when the port learns a new MAC address.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable Port Security function for port 1/0/1, select Static mode as the learn mode, and specify the maximum number of MAC addresses that can be learned on this port as 30. When the number of MAC address entries reaches 30 on this port, new entry will be dropped:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)# mac address-table max-mac-count max-number 30
mode static status drop
```

12.6 show mac address-table

Description

The **show mac address-table** command is used to display the information of all address entries.

Syntax

```
show mac address-table { dynamic | static | filtering }
```

Parameter

dynamic | static | filtering — The type of your desired entry. By default, all the entries are displayed.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the information of all address entries:

```
Switch(config)# show mac address-table
```

12.7 clear mac address-table

Description

The **show mac address-table** command is used to clear the specified address entries.

Syntax

```
clear mac address-table { dynamic | static | filtering }
```

Parameter

dynamic | static | filtering — The type of your desired entry.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Clear the information of all static address entries:

```
Switch(config)# clear mac address-table static
```

12.8 show mac address-table aging-time

Description

The **show mac address-table aging-time** command is used to display the Aging Time of the MAC address.

Syntax

```
show mac address-table aging-time
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the Aging Time of the MAC address:

```
Switch(config)# show mac address-table aging-time
```

12.9 show mac address-table max-mac-count

Description

The **show mac address-table max-mac-count interface gigabitEthernet** command is used to display the security configuration of all ports or the specified port.

Syntax

```
show mac address-table max-mac-count { all | interface gigabitEthernet port}
```

Parameter

all — Displays the security information of all the Ethernet ports.

port — The Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the security configuration of all ports:

```
Switch(config)# show mac address-table max-mac-count all
```

Display the security configuration of port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)# show mac address-table max-mac-count interface  
gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

12.10 show mac address-table interface

Description

The **show mac address-table interface** command is used to display the address configuration of the specified port/port channel.

Syntax

```
show mac address-table interface { gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id}
```

Parameter

port — The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id — The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the address configuration of port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)# show mac address-table interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

12.11 show mac address-table count

Description

The **show mac address-table count** command is used to display the total amount of MAC address table.

Syntax

```
show mac address-table count [ vlan vlan-id]
```

Parameter

vlan-id — Specify the VLAN which the MAC entries belong to.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the total MAC entry information in different VLANs:

```
Switch(config)# show mac address-table count
```

12.12 show mac address-table address

Description

The **show mac address-table address** command is used to display the information of the specified MAC address.

Syntax

```
show mac address-table address mac-addr [ interface { gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id } | vid vlan-id]
```

Parameter

mac-addr——The specified MAC address.

port—— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel.

vlan-id—— Specify the VLAN which the entry belongs to.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the information of the MAC address 00:00:00:00:23:00 in VLAN 1:

```
Switch(config)#show mac address-table address 00:00:00:00:23:00 vid 1
```

12.13 show mac address-table vlan

Description

The **show mac address-table vlan** command is used to display the MAC address configuration of the specified vlan.

Syntax

```
show mac address-table vlan vid
```

Parameter

vid——The specified VLAN id.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the MAC address configuration of vlan 1:

```
Switch(config)# show mac address-table vlan 1
```

Chapter 13 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Commands

VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) technology is developed for the switch to divide the LAN into multiple logical LANs flexibly. Hosts in the same VLAN can communicate with each other, regardless of their physical locations. VLAN can enhance performance by conserving bandwidth, and improve security by limiting traffic to specific domains.

13.1 vlan

Description

The **vlan** command is used to create IEEE 802.1Q VLAN and enter VLAN Configuration Mode. To delete the IEEE 802.1Q VLAN, please use **no vlan** command.

Syntax

vlan *vlan-list*
no vlan *vlan-list*

Parameter

vlan-list—— Specify IEEE 802.1Q VLAN ID list, ranging from 2 to 4094, in the format of 2-3, 5. It is multi-optional.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create VLAN 2-10 and VLAN 100:

```
Switch(config)# vlan 2-10,100
```

Delete VLAN 2:

```
Switch(config)# no vlan 2
```

13.2 name

Description

The **name** command is used to assign a description to a VLAN. To clear the description, please use **no name** command.

Syntax

```
name descript  
no name
```

Parameter

descript —String to describe the VLAN, which contains 16 characters at most.

Command Mode

VLAN Configuration Mode(VLAN)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the name of VLAN 2 as "group1":

```
Switch(config)# vlan 2  
Switch(config-vlan)# name group1
```

13.3 vlan_trunk (globally)

Description

The **vlan_trunk** command is used to enable VLAN Trunk globally. To disable VLAN Trunk, use the **no vlan_trunk** command.

Syntax

```
vlan_trunk  
no vlan_trunk
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable VLAN Trunk globally:

```
Switch(config)#vlan_trunk
```

13.4 vlan_trunk (interface)

Description

The **vlan_trunk** command is used to enable VLAN Trunk for the desired port. When enabled, all packets in VLANs will pass through this port. To disable VLAN Trunk, use the **no vlan_trunk** command. By default, it is disabled.

Syntax

```
vlan_trunk  
no vlan_trunk
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable VLAN Trunk for port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3  
Switch(config-if)#vlan_trunk
```

13.5 switchport general allowed vlan

Description

The **switchport general allowed vlan** command is used to add the desired port to IEEE 802.1Q VLAN, or to remove a port from the corresponding VLAN.

Syntax

```
switchport general allowed vlan vlan-list { tagged | untagged }  
no switchport general allowed vlan vlan-list
```

Parameter

vlan-list — VLAN ID list, ranging from 2 to 4094, in the format of 2-3, 5. It is multi-optional.

tagged | untagged — egress-rule.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/4 whose link type is "general" to VLAN 2 and its egress-rule as "tagged":

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/4  
Switch(config-if)#switchport general allowed vlan 2 tagged
```

13.6 switchport pvid

Description

The **switchport pvid** command is used to configure the PVID for the switch ports.

Syntax

```
switchport pvid vlan-id
```

Parameter

vlan-id — VLAN ID, ranging from 1 to 4094.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the PVID of port 1/0/2 as 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# switchport pvid 2
```

13.7 switchport check ingress

Description

The **switchport check ingress** command is used to enable the Ingress Checking function for the switch ports. With this function enabled, the port will accept the packet of which the VLAN ID is in the port's VLAN list and discard others. With this function disabled, the port will forward the packet directly. To disable this function, please use **no switchport check ingress** command.

Syntax

```
switchport check ingress
no switchport check ingress
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable Ingress Checking on the port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# switchport check ingress
```

13.8 switchport acceptable frame

Description

The **switchport acceptable frame** command is used to specify the acceptable frame type for the switch ports and the ports will perform this operation before Ingress Checking. To restore to the default setting, please use **no switchport acceptable frame** command.

Syntax

```
switchport acceptable frame { all | tagged }  
no switchport acceptable frame
```

Parameter

all | tagged — the acceptable frame type.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the acceptable frame type of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/4 as "tagged":

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/4  
Switch(config-if)#switchport acceptable frame general
```

13.9 show vlan summary

Description

The **show vlan summary** command is used to display the summarized information of IEEE 802.1Q VLAN.

Syntax

```
show vlan summary
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the summarized information of IEEE 802.1Q VLAN:

```
Switch(config)# show vlan summary
```

13.10 show vlan brief

Description

The **show vlan brief** command is used to display the brief information of IEEE 802.1Q VLAN.

Syntax

```
show vlan brief
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the brief information of IEEE 802.1Q VLAN:

```
Switch(config)# show vlan brief
```

13.11 show vlan

Description

The **show vlan** command is used to display the information of IEEE 802.1Q VLAN.

Syntax

```
show vlan [ id vlan-id]
```

Parameter

vlan-id — Specify IEEE 802.1Q VLAN ID, ranging from 1 to 4094. It is multi-optional. Using the **show vlan** command without parameter displays the detailed information of all VLANs.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the information of vlan 5:

```
Switch(config)# show vlan id 5
```

13.12 show interface switchport

Description

The **show interface switchport** command is used to display the IEEE 802.1Q VLAN configuration information of the specified port/port channel.

Syntax

```
show interface switchport [fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id]
```

Parameter

port—— The port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the VLAN configuration information of all ports and port channels:

```
Switch(config)# show interface switchport
```

Chapter 14 MAC-based VLAN Commands

MAC VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) is the way to classify the VLANs based on MAC Address. A MAC address is relative to a single VLAN ID. The untagged packets and the priority-tagged packets coming from the MAC address will be tagged with this VLAN ID.

14.1 mac-vlan mac-address

Description

The **mac-vlan mac-address** command is used to create a MAC-based VLAN entry. To delete a MAC-based VLAN entry, please use the **no mac-vlan mac-address** command.

Syntax

```
mac-vlan mac-address mac-addr vlan vlan-id [description descript]  
no mac-vlan mac-address mac-addr
```

Parameter

mac-addr—— MAC address, in the format of XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX.

vlan-id—— Specify IEEE 802.1Q VLAN ID, ranging from 1 to 4094.

descript—— Give a description to the MAC address for identification, which contains 8 characters at most.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create VLAN 2 with the MAC address 00:11:11:01:01:12 and the name "TP":

```
Switch(config)#mac-vlan mac-address 00:11:11:01:01:12 vlan 2  
description TP
```

14.2 mac-vlan

Description

The **mac-vlan** command is used to enable a port for the MAC-based VLAN feature. Only the port is enabled can the configured MAC-based VLAN take effect. To disable the MAC-based VLAN function, please use **no mac-vlan** command. All the ports are disabled by default.

Syntax

```
mac-vlan
no mac-vlan
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/3 for the MAC-based VLAN feature:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)#mac-vlan
```

14.3 show mac-vlan

Description

The **show mac-vlan** command is used to display the information of the MAC-based VLAN entry. MAC address and VLAN ID can be used to filter the displayed information.

Syntax

```
show mac-vlan { all | mac-address mac-addr | vlan vlan-id }
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Parameter

mac-addr—— MAC address, in the format of XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX.

vlan-id—— Specify IEEE 802.1Q VLAN ID, ranging from 1 to 4094.

Example

Display the information of all the MAC-based VLAN entry:

```
Switch(config)#show mac-vlan all
```

14.4 show mac-vlan interface

Description

The **show mac-vlan interface** command is used to display the port state of MAC-based VLAN.

Syntax

```
show mac-vlan interface
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the enable state of all the ports:

```
Switch(config)#show mac-vlan interface
```

Chapter 15 Protocol-based VLAN Commands

Protocol VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) is the way to classify VLANs based on Protocols. A Protocol is relative to a single VLAN ID. The untagged packets and the priority-tagged packets matching the protocol template will be tagged with this VLAN ID.

15.1 protocol-vlan template

Description

The **protocol-vlan template** command is used to create Protocol-based VLAN template. To delete Protocol-based VLAN template, please use **no protocol-vlan template** command.

Syntax

```
protocol-vlan template name protocol-name frame { ether_2 ether-type  
type | snap ether-type type | llc dsap dsap_type ssap ssap_type }  
no protocol-vlan template template-idx
```

Parameter

protocol-name — Give a name for the Protocol-based VLAN Template , which contains 8 characters at most.

ether_2 ether-type *type* — Specify the Ethernet type.

snap ether-type *type* — Specify the Ethernet type.

llc dsap *dsap_type* **ssap** *ssap_type* — Specify the DSAP type and the SSAP type.

template-idx — The number of the Protocol-based VLAN Template. You can get the template corresponding to the number by the [show protocol-vlan template](#) command.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create a Protocol-based VLAN template named "TP" whose Ethernet protocol type is 0x2024:

```
Switch(config)#protocol-vlan template name TP frame ether_2 ether-type
2024
```

15.2 protocol-vlan vlan

Description

The **protocol-vlan vlan** command is used to create a Protocol-based VLAN entry. To delete a Protocol-based VLAN entry, please use **no protocol-vlan vlan** command.

Syntax

```
protocol-vlan vlan vlan-id priority priority template template-idx  
no protocol-vlan vlan group-idx
```

Parameter

vlan-id— Specify IEEE 802.1Q VLAN ID, ranging from 1-4094.

priority— Specify the 802.1p priority for the packets that belong to the protocol VLAN, ranging from 0–7. The switch will determine the forwarding sequence according to this value. The packets with larger value of 802.1p priority have the higher priority.

template-idx—The number of the Protocol-based VLAN Template. You can get the template corresponding to the number by the [show protocol-vlan template](#) command.

group-idx—The number of the Protocol-based VLAN entry. You can get the Protocol-based VLAN entry corresponding to the number by the [show protocol-vlan vlan](#) command.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create Protocol-based VLAN 2 and bind it with Protocol-based VLAN Template 3:

```
Switch(config)#protocol-vlan vlan 2 template 3
```

15.3 protocol-vlan group

Description

The **protocol-vlan** command is used to add the port to a specified protocol group. To remove the port from this protocol group, please use **no protocol-vlan group** command.

Syntax

```
protocol-vlan group index
```

```
no protocol-vlan group index
```

Parameter

index—— Specify the protocol group ID.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add Gigabit Ethernet port 20 to protocol group 1:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/20
```

```
Switch(config-if)#protocol-vlan group 1
```

15.4 show protocol-vlan template

Description

The **show protocol-vlan template** command is used to display the information of the Protocol-based VLAN templates.

Syntax

show protocol-vlan template

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the information of the Protocol-based VLAN templates:

```
Switch(config)#show protocol-vlan template
```

15.5 show protocol-vlan vlan

Description

The **show protocol-vlan vlan** command is used to display the information about Protocol-based VLAN entry.

Syntax

show protocol-vlan vlan

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display information of the Protocol-based VLAN entry:

```
Switch(config)#show protocol-vlan vlan
```

Chapter 16 GVRP Commands

GVRP (GARP VLAN registration protocol) is an implementation of GARP (generic attribute registration protocol). GVRP allows the switch to automatically add or remove the VLANs via the dynamic VLAN registration information and propagate the local VLAN registration information to other switches, without having to individually configure each VLAN.

16.1 gvrp

Description

The **gvrp** command is used to enable the GVRP function globally. To disable the GVRP function, please use **no gvrp** command.

Syntax

gvrp

no gvrp

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the GVRP function globally:

```
Switch(config)#gvrp
```

16.2 gvrp (interface)

Description

The **gvrp** command is used to enable the GVRP function for the desired port. To disable it, please use **no gvrp** command. The GVRP feature can only be enabled for the trunk-type ports.

Syntax

gvrp

no gvrp

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the GVRP function for Gigabit Ethernet ports 1/0/2-6:

```
Switch(config)#interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/2-6
Switch(config-if-range)#gvrp
```

16.3 gvrp registration

Description

The **gvrp registration** command is used to configure the GVRP registration type for the desired port. To restore to the default value, please use **no gvrp registration** command.

Syntax

```
gvrp registration { normal | fixed | forbidden }
no gvrp registration
```

Parameter

normal | fixed | forbidden — Registration mode. By default, the registration mode is "normal".

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the GVRP registration mode as "fixed" for Gigabit Ethernet ports 1/0/2-6:

```
Switch(config)#interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/2-6
Switch(config-if-range)#gvrp registration fixed
```

16.4 gvrp timer

Description

The **gvrp timer** command is used to set a GVRP timer for the desired port. To restore to the default setting of a GARP timer, please use **no gvrp timer** command.

Syntax

```
gvrp timer { leaveall | join | leave } value
```

```
no gvrp timer [leaveall | join | leave]
```

Parameter

leaveall | join | leave — They are the three timers: leave All, join and leave. Once the LeaveAll Timer is set, the port with GVRP enabled can send a LeaveAll message after the timer times out, so that other GARP ports can re-register all the attribute information. After that, the LeaveAll timer will start to begin a new cycle. To guarantee the transmission of the Join messages, a GARP port sends each Join message two times. The Join Timer is used to define the interval between the two sending operations of each Join message. Once the Leave Timer is set, the GARP port receiving a Leave message will start its Leave timer, and deregister the attribute information if it does not receive a Join message again before the timer times out.

value — The value of the timer. The LeaveAll Timer ranges from 1000 to 30000 centiseconds and the default value is 1000 centiseconds. The Join Timer ranges from 20 to 1000 centiseconds and the default value is 20 centiseconds. The Leave Timer ranges from 60 to 3000 centiseconds and the default value is 60 centiseconds.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the GARP leaveall timer of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/6 as 2000 centiseconds and restore the join timer of it to the default value:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/6
```

```
Switch(config-if)#gvrp timer leaveall 2000
```

```
Switch(config-if)#no gvrp timer join
```

16.5 show gvrp interface

Description

The **show gvrp interface** command is used to display the GVRP configuration information of a specified Ethernet port or of all Ethernet ports.

Syntax

```
show gvrp interface [fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id]
```

Parameter

port—— The port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the GVRP configuration information of Gigabit Ethernet port 1:

```
Switch(config)#show gvrp interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

Display the GVRP configuration information of all Ethernet ports:

```
Switch(config)#show gvrp interface
```

16.6 show gvrp global

Description

The **show gvrp global** command is used to display the global GVRP status.

Syntax

```
show gvrp global
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the global GVRP status:

```
Switch(config)#show gvrp global
```

Chapter 17 IGMP Snooping Commands

IGMP Snooping (Internet Group Management Protocol Snooping) is a multicast control mechanism running on Layer 2 switch. It can effectively prevent multicast groups being broadcasted in the network.

17.1 ip igmp snooping (global)

Description

The **ip igmp snooping** command is used to configure IGMP Snooping globally. To disable the IGMP Snooping function, please use **no ip igmp snooping** command.

Syntax

ip igmp snooping
no ip igmp snooping

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable IGMP Snooping function:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping
```

17.2 ip igmp snooping version

Description

The **ip igmp snooping version** command is used to configure IGMP version globally. To return to the default configuration, please use **no ip igmp snooping version** command.

Syntax

ip igmp snooping version {v1 | v2 | v3 }
no ip igmp snooping version

Parameter

v1 | v2 | v3— Specify the IGMP version. By default, it is IGMP v3.

v1: The switch works as an IGMPv1 Snooping switch. It can only process IGMPv1 messages from the host. Report messages of other versions are ignored.

v2: The switch works as an IGMPv2 Snooping switch. It can process both IGMPv1 and IGMPv2 messages from the host. IGMPv3 messages are ignored.

v3: The switch works as an IGMPv3 Snooping switch. It can process IGMPv1, IGMPv2 and IGMPv3 messages from the host.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the IGMP version as v2:

```
Switch (config)# ip igmp snooping version v2
```

17.3 ip igmp snooping drop-unknown

Description

The **ip igmp snooping drop-unknown** command is used to configure the way how the switch processes multicast streams that are sent to unknown multicast groups as Discard. By default, it is Forward. To return to the default configuration, please use **no ip igmp snooping drop-unknown** command.

Syntax

ip igmp snooping drop-unknown

no ip igmp snooping drop-unknown

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the operation to process unknown multicast as discard:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping drop-unknown
```

17.4 ip igmp snooping header-validation

Description

The **ip igmp snooping header-validation** command is used to enable IGMP Header Validation globally. To disable the IGMP Header Validation function, please use **no ip igmp snooping header-validation** command.

Generally, for IGMP packets, the TTL value should be 1, ToS field should be 0xC0, and Router Alert option should be 0x94040000. The fields to be validated depend on the IGMP version being used. IGMPv1 only checks the TTL field. IGMPv2 checks the TTL field and the Router Alert option. IGMPv3 checks TTL field, ToS field and Router Alert option. Packets that fail the validation process will be dropped.

Syntax

```
ip igmp snooping header-validation  
no ip igmp snooping header-validation
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable IGMP Header Validation:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping header-validation
```

17.5 ip igmp snooping vlan-config

Description

The **ip igmp snooping vlan-config** command is used to enable VLAN IGMP Snooping function or to modify IGMP Snooping parameters. To disable the VLAN IGMP Snooping function, please use **no ip igmp snooping vlan-config** command. To restore the default values, please use **no ip igmp snooping vlan-config** with specified parameters.

Syntax

```
ip igmp snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list [ rtime router-time | mtime  
member-time | ltime leave-time ]
```

no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* [rtime | mtime | ltime]

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

router-time — The Router Port Aging Time. Within this time, if the switch does not receive IGMP query message from the router port, it will consider this port is not a router port any more. Valid values are from 60 to 600 in seconds, and the default value is 300 seconds.

member-time — The Member Port Aging Time. Within this time, if the switch does not receive IGMP report message from the member port, it will consider this port is not a member port any more. Valid values are from 60 to 600 in seconds, and the default value is 260 seconds.

leave-time — The Leave Time. Valid values are from 1 to 30 in seconds, and the default value is 1 second. When the switch receives a leave message from a port to leave a multicast group, it will wait for a Leave Time before removing the port from the multicast group. During the period, if the switch receives any report messages from the port, the port will not be removed from the multicast group. Exceptions are as follows:

- If the member port ages out before the Leave Time ends and no report messages are received, the port will be removed from the multicast group once its Member Port Aging Time ends.
- The Leave Time mechanism will not take effect when Fast Leave takes effect.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the IGMP Snooping function and modify Router Port Aging Time as 300 seconds, Member Port Aging Time as 200 seconds for VLAN 1-3:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan-config 1-3 rtime 300
```

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan-config 1-3 mtime 200
```

17.6 ip igmp snooping vlan-config (immediate-leave)

Description

This command is used to enable the Fast Leave feature for specific VLANs. To disable Fast Leave on the VLANs, please use **no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* immediate-leave** command. This function is disabled by default.

Syntax

ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* immediate-leave

no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* immediate-leave

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the Fast Leave for VLAN 1-3:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan-config 1-3 immediate-leave
```

17.7 ip igmp snooping vlan-config (report-suppression)

Description

This command is used to enable the IGMP Report Suppression function for specific VLANs. When enabled, the switch will only forward the first IGMP report message for each multicast group to the IGMP querier and suppress subsequent IGMP report messages for the same multicast group during one query interval. This feature prevents duplicate report messages from being sent to the IGMP querier. To disable the IGMP report suppression function and forward all the IGMP reports to the Layer 3 device in specific VLANs,

please use **no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* report-suppression** command. This function is disabled by default.

Syntax

ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* report-suppression

no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* report-suppression

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the IGMP Report Suppression for VLAN 1-3:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan-config 1-3 report-suppression
```

17.8 ip igmp snooping vlan-config (router-ports-forbidden)

Description

This command is used to forbid the specified ports as being router ports in the specified VLAN(s). To delete the forbidden router ports, please use **no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* router-ports-forbidd** command.

Syntax

ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* router-ports-forbidd interface { gigabitEthernet *port-list* | port-channel *port-channel-list* }

no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* router-ports-forbidd interface [gigabitEthernet *port-list* | port-channel *port-channel-list*]

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

port-list — Forbid the specified ports as being router ports. Packets sent from multicast routers to these ports will be discarded.

port-channel-list — Forbid the specified port-channels as being router ports. Packets sent from multicast routers to these port-channels will be discarded.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Forbid the Ethernet ports 1/0/1-3 as being router ports in VLAN 1 :

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan-config 1 router-ports-forbidd
interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1-3
```

17.9 ip igmp snooping vlan-config (rport interface)

Description

This command is used to specify the static router ports for specific VLANs. To delete the static router ports, please use **no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* rport interface** command.

Syntax

```
ip igmp snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list rport interface { gigabitEthernet port-list | port-channel port-channel-list }
```

```
no ip igmp snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list rport interface { gigabitEthernet port-list | port-channel port-channel-list }
```

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

port-list — The list of Ethernet ports.

port-channel-list — The ID of the port channels.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the router port as 1/0/1 for VLAN 1-2:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan-config 1-2 rport interface
gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

17.10 ip igmp snooping vlan-config (static)

Description

This command is used to configure interfaces to statically join a multicast group. To remove interfaces from a static multicast group, please use **no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* static** command.

Syntax

```
ip igmp snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list static ip interface
{ gigabitEthernet port-list | port-channel port-channel-list }
no ip igmp snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list static ip interface
{ gigabitEthernet port-list | port-channel port-channel-list }
```

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

ip — Specify the IP address of the multicast group that the hosts want to join.

port-list — The list of Ethernet ports.

port-channel-list — The ID of the port channels.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure port ports 1/0/1-3 in VLAN 2 to statically join multicast group 225.0.0.1:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan-config 2 static 225.0.0.1 interface
gigabitEthernet 1/0/1-3
```

17.11 ip igmp snooping vlan-config (querier)

Description

This command is used to enable the IGMP Snooping Querier feature for specific VLANs. To disable the IGMP Snooping Querier feature on the VLANs, please use **no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* querier** command without any parameters. To restore the default values, please use **no ip igmp snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* querier** command with specified parameters.

Syntax

```
ip igmp snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list querier [ max-response-time response-time | query-interval interval | general-query source-ip ip-addr | last-member-query-count count | last-member-query-interval interval ]  
no ip igmp snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list querier [ max-response-time | query-interval | general-query source-ip | last-member-query-count ]
```

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

response-time — The host's maximum response time to general query messages. Valid values are from 1 to 25 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.

query-interval *interval* — The interval between general query messages sent by the switch. Valid values are from 10 to 300 seconds, and the default value is 60 seconds.

ip-addr — The source IP address of the general query messages sent by the switch. It should be a unicast address. By default, it is 0.0.0.0.

count — The number of group-specific queries to be sent. With IGMP Snooping Querier enabled, when the switch receives an IGMP leave message, it obtains the address of the multicast group that the host wants to leave from the message. Then the switch sends out group-specific queries to this multicast group through the port receiving the leave message. If specified count of group-specific queries are sent and no report message is received, the switch will delete the multicast address from the multicast forwarding table. Valid values are from 1 to 5, and the default value is 2.

last-member-query-interval *interval* — The interval between group-specific queries.. Valid values are from 1 to 5 seconds, and the default value is 1 second.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the IGMP Snooping Querier for VLAN 3, and configure the query interval as 100 seconds:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan-config 3 querier
```

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp snooping vlan-config 3 querier query interval 100
```

17.12 ip igmp snooping (interface)

Description

The **ip igmp snooping** command is used to enable the IGMP Snooping function for the desired port. To disable the IGMP Snooping function, please use **no ip igmp snooping** command.

Syntax

ip igmp snooping

no ip igmp snooping

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable IGMP Snooping function of port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
```

```
Switch(config-if)# ip igmp snooping
```

17.13 ip igmp snooping max-groups

Description

The **ip igmp snooping max-groups** command is used to configure the maximum number of groups that a port can join in. The **ip igmp snooping max-groups action** is used to configure the action that the port takes when it receives an IGMP report message and the maximum number of entries is in the forwarding table. To remove the maximum group limitation and return to the default of no limitation on the specified port, please use the **no ip igmp snooping max-groups** command. To return to the default action of dropping the report, please use the **no ip igmp snooping max-groups action** command. These commands only apply to the dynamic multicast groups.

Syntax

```
ip igmp snooping max-groups maxgroup  
ip igmp snooping max-groups action { drop | replace }  
no ip igmp snooping max-groups  
no ip igmp snooping max-groups action
```

Parameter

maxgroup — Specify the maximum numbers of groups that the port can join. It ranges from 0 to 1000 and the default value is 1000.

drop — When the number of the dynamic multicast groups that a port joins has exceeded the max-group, the port will not join any new multicast group.

replace — When the number of the dynamic multicast groups that a port joins has exceeded the max-group, the newly joined multicast group will replace an existing multicast group with the lowest multicast group address.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the maximum numbers of groups that ports 1/0/2-5 can join as 10, and configure the throttling action as replace:

```
Switch(config)#interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/2-5
```

```
Switch(config-if-range)#ip igmp snooping max-groups 10
```

```
Switch(config-if-range)#ip igmp snooping max-groups action replace
```

17.14 ip igmp snooping immediate-leave

Description

The **ip igmp snooping immediate-leave** command is used to configure the Fast Leave function for port. To disable the Fast Leave function, please use **no ip igmp snooping immediate-leave** command.

Syntax

```
ip igmp snooping immediate-leave
```

```
no ip igmp snooping immediate-leave
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the Fast Leave function for port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
```

```
Switch(config-if)# ip igmp snooping immediate-leave
```

17.15 ip igmp profile

Description

The **ip igmp profile** command is used to create the configuration profile. To delete the corresponding profile, please use **no ip igmp profile** command.

Syntax

```
ip igmp profile id
```

```
no ip igmp profile id
```

Parameter

id— Specify the id of the configuration profile, ranging from 1 to 999.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create the profile 1:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp profile 1
```

17.16 deny

Description

The **deny** command is used to configure the filtering mode of profile as deny.

Syntax

deny

Command Mode

Profile Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the filtering mode of profile 1 as deny:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp profile 1  
Switch(config-igmp-profile)#deny
```

17.17 permit

Description

The **permit** command is used to configure the filtering mode of profile as permit.

Syntax

permit

Command Mode

Profile Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the filtering mode of profile 1 as permit:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp profile 1
Switch(config-igmp-profile)#permit
```

17.18 range

Description

The **range** command is used to configure the range of the profile's filtering multicast address. To delete the corresponding filtering multicast address, please use **no range** command. A profile contains 16 filtering IP-range entries at most.

Syntax

```
range start-ip end-ip
no range start-ip end-ip
```

Parameter

start-ip—— The start filtering multicast IP address.

end-ip—— The end filtering multicast IP address.

Command Mode

Profile Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure one of the filter multicast address entry as range 225.1.1.1 to 226.3.2.1 in profile 1:

```
Switch(config)# ip igmp profile 1
Switch(config-igmp-profile)#range 225.1.1.1 226.3.2.1
```


17.19 ip igmp filter

Description

The **ip igmp filter** command is used to bind the specified profile to the interface. To delete the binding, please use **no ip igmp filter** command.

Syntax

```
ip igmp filter profile-id  
no ip igmp filter
```

Parameter

profile-id—— Specify the profile ID, ranging from 1 to 999.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Bind profile 1 to interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2  
Switch(config-if)# ip igmp filter 1
```

17.20 clear ip igmp snooping statistics

Description

The **clear ip igmp snooping statistics** command is used to clear the statistics of the IGMP packets.

Syntax

```
clear ip igmp snooping statistics
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Clear the statistics of the IGMP packets:

```
Switch(config)# clear ip igmp snooping statistics
```

17.21 show ip igmp snooping

Description

The **show ip igmp snooping** command is used to display the global configuration of IGMP snooping.

Syntax

```
show ip igmp snooping
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the global configuration of IGMP:

```
Switch# show ip igmp snooping
```

17.22 show ip igmp snooping interface

Description

The **show ip igmp snooping interface** command is used to display the port configuration of IGMP snooping. If no interface is specified, it displays all interfaces' IGMP snooping configurations.

Syntax

```
show ip igmp snooping interface [ gigabitEthernet [port-list] |  
port-channel [port-channel-list] ] { basic-config | max-groups | packet-stat }
```

Parameter

port-list — The list of Ethernet ports.

Port-channel-list — The list of port channels.

basic-config | max-groups | packet-stat — The related configuration information selected to display.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IGMP basic configuration configuration of all ports and port channels:

```
Switch# show ip igmp snooping interface basic-config
```

Display the IGMP basic configuration of port 1/0/2:

```
Switch# show ip igmp snooping interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
basic-config
```

Display the IGMP packet statistics of ports 1/0/1-4:

```
Switch# show ip igmp snooping interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1-4
packet-stat
```

17.23 show ip igmp snooping vlan

Description

The **show ip igmp snooping vlan** command is used to display the VLAN configuration of IGMP snooping.

Syntax

```
show ip igmp snooping vlan [ vlan-id ]
```

Parameter

vlan-id—The VLAN ID selected to display.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IGMP snooping configuration information of VLAN 2:

```
Switch# show ip igmp snooping vlan 2
```

17.24 show ip igmp snooping groups

Description

The **show ip igmp snooping groups** command is used to display the information of all IGMP snooping groups. It can be extended to some other commands to display the dynamic and static multicast information of a selected VLAN.

Syntax

```
show ip igmp snooping groups [ vlan { vlan-id } ] [ multicast_addr | count | dynamic | dynamic count | static | static count ]
```

Parameter

vlan-id —The VLAN ID selected to display the information of all multicast items.

multicast_addr — IP address of the multicast group.

count — The numbers of all multicast groups.

dynamic — Display dynamic multicast groups.

dynamic count — The numbers of all dynamic multicast groups.

static — Display static multicast groups.

static count — The numbers of all static multicast groups.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the information of all IGMP snooping groups:

```
Switch#show ip igmp snooping groups
```

Display all the multicast entries in VLAN 5:

```
Switch(config)#show ip igmp snooping groups vlan 5
```

Display the count of multicast entries in VLAN 5:

```
Switch(config)#show ip igmp snooping groups vlan 5 count
```

Display the dynamic multicast groups of VLAN 5

```
Switch(config)#show ip igmp snooping groups vlan 5 dynamic
```

Display the static multicast groups of VLAN 5

```
Switch(config)#show ip igmp snooping groups vlan 5 static
```

Display the count of dynamic multicast entries of VLAN 5

```
Switch(config)#show ip igmp snooping groups vlan 5 dynamic count
```

Display the count of static multicast entries of VLAN 5

```
Switch(config)#show ip igmp snooping groups vlan 5 static count
```

17.25 show ip igmp profile

Description

The **show ip igmp profile** command is used to display the configuration information of all the profiles or a specific profile.

Syntax

```
show ip igmp profile [ id ]
```

Parameter

id—— Specify the ID of the profile, ranging from 1 to 999.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration information of all profiles:

```
Switch(config)# show ip igmp profile
```

Chapter 18 MLD Snooping Commands

MLD Snooping (Multicast Listener Discovery Snooping) is a multicast control mechanism running on Layer 2 switch. It can effectively prevent multicast groups being broadcasted in the IPv6 network.

18.1 ipv6 mld snooping (global)

Description

The **ipv6 mld snooping** command is used to enable MLD Snooping function globally. If this function is disabled, all related MLD Snooping function would not work. To disable this function, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping** command.

Syntax

ipv6 mld snooping
no ipv6 mld snooping

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable MLD Snooping:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping
```

18.2 ipv6 mld snooping drop-unknown

Description

The **ipv6 mld snooping drop-unknown** command is used to enable the unknown multicast packets filter function. To disable this function, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping drop-unknown** command. By default, it is disabled.

Syntax

ipv6 mld snooping drop-unknown
no ipv6 mld snooping drop-unknown

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable unknown multicast filter function:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping drop-unknown
```

18.3 ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config

Description

The **ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config** command is used to enable VLAN MLD Snooping function or to modify MLD Snooping parameters. To disable the VLAN MLD Snooping function, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list [ rtime router-time | mtime member-time | ltime leave-time ]
```

```
no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list [ rtime | mtime | ltime ]
```

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

router-time — The Router Port Aging Time. Within this time, if the switch does not receive any MLD query messages from the router port, it will consider this port is not a router port any more. Valid values are from 60 to 600 in seconds, and the default value is 300 seconds.

member-time — The Member Port Aging Time. Within this time, if the switch does not receive any MLD report messages from the member port, it will consider this port is not a member port any more. Valid values are from 60 to 600 in seconds, and the default value is 260 seconds.

leave-time — The Leave Time. Valid values are from 1 to 30 in seconds, and the default value is 1 second. When the switch receives a done message from a port to leave a multicast group, it will wait for a Leave Time before removing the port from the multicast group. During the period, if the switch receives any report messages from the port, the port will not be removed from the multicast group. Exceptions are as follows:

- If the member port ages out before the Leave Time ends and no report messages are received, the port will be removed from the multicast group once its Member Port Aging Time ends.

- The Leave Time mechanism will not take effect when Fast Leave takes effect.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the MLD Snooping function and modify Router Port Time as 300 seconds, Member Port Time as 200 seconds for VLAN 1-3:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config 1-3 rtime 300
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config 1-3 mtime 200
```

18.4 ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (immediate-leave)

Description

This command is used to enable the Fast Leave feature for specific VLANs. To disable Fast Leave on the VLANs, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* immediate-leave** command. This function is disabled by default.

Syntax

```
ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list immediate-leave
no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list immediate-leave
```

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the Fast Leave for VLAN 1-3:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config 1-3 immediate-leave
```


18.5 ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (report-suppression)

Description

This command is used to enable the MLD Report Suppression function for specific VLANs. When enabled, the switch will only forward the first MLD report message for each multicast group to the MLD querier and suppress subsequent MLD report messages for the same multicast group during one query interval. This feature prevents duplicate report messages from being sent to the MLD querier. To disable the MLD report suppression function and forward all the MLD reports to the Layer 3 device in specific VLANs, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* report-suppression** command. This function is disabled by default.

Syntax

ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* report-suppression

no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* report-suppression

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the MLD Report Suppression for VLAN 1-3:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config 1-3 report-suppression
```

18.6 ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (router-ports-forbidden)

Description

This command is used to forbid the specified ports as being router ports in the specified VLAN(s). To delete the forbidden router ports, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* router-ports-forbidd** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list router-ports-forbidd interface  
{ gigabitEthernet port-list | port-channel port-channel-list }  
no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list router-ports-forbidd  
interface [ gigabitEthernet port-list | port-channel port-channel-list ]
```

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

port-list — Forbid the specified ports as being router ports. Packets sent from multicast routers to these ports will be discarded.

port-channel-list — Forbid the specified port-channels as being router ports. Packets sent from multicast routers to these port-channels will be discarded.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Forbid the Ethernet ports 1/0/1-3 as being router ports in VLAN 1:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config 1 router-ports-forbidd  
interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1-3
```

18.7 ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (rport interface)

Description

This command is used to specify the static router ports for specific VLANs. To delete the static router ports, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* rport interface** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list rport interface { gigabitEthernet port-list | port-channel port-channel-list }  
no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list rport interface { gigabitEthernet port-list | port-channel port-channel-list }
```

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

port-list — The list of Ethernet ports.

port-channel-list — The ID of the port channels.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the router port as 1/0/1 for VLAN 1-2:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config 1-2 rport interface  
gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

18.8 ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (static)

Description

This command is used to configure interfaces to statically join a multicast group. To remove interfaces from a static multicast group, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* static** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list static ip interface  
{ gigabitEthernet port-list | port-channel port-channel-list }  
  
no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list static ip interface  
{ gigabitEthernet port-list | port-channel port-channel-list}
```

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

ip — Specify the IP address of the multicast group that the hosts want to join.

port-list — The list of Ethernet ports.

port-channel-list — The ID of the port channels.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure port ports 1/0/1-3 in VLAN 2 to statically join multicast group ff80::1234:1:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config 2 static ff80::1234:1  
interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1-3
```

18.9 ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config (querier)

Description

This command is used to enable the MLD Snooping Querier feature for specific VLANs. To disable the MLD Snooping Querier feature on the VLANs, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* querier** command without any parameters. To restore the default values, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config *vlan-id-list* querier** command with specified parameters.

Syntax

```
ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list querier [ max-response-time  
response-time | query-interval interval | general-query source-ip ip-addr |  
last-listener-query-count count | last-listener-query-interval interval ]
```

```
no ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config vlan-id-list querier [ max-response-time |  
query-interval | general-query source-ip | last-listener-query-count |  
last-listener-query-interval ]
```

Parameter

vlan-id-list — The ID list of the VLAN desired to modify configuration, ranging from 1 to 4094, in the format of 1-3, 5.

response-time — The host's maximum response time to general query messages. Valid values are from 1 to 25 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.

query-interval *interval* — The interval between general query messages sent by the switch. Valid values are from 10 to 300 seconds, and the default value is 60 seconds.

ip-addr — The source IP address of the general query messages sent by the switch. It should be a unicast address. By default, it is fe80::2ff:ffff:fe00:1.

count — The number of group-specific queries to be sent. With MLD Snooping Querier enabled, when the switch receives an MLD done message, it obtains the address of the multicast group that the host wants to leave from the message. Then the switch sends out group-specific queries to this multicast group through the port receiving the done message. If specified count of group-specific queries are sent and no report message is received, the switch will delete the multicast address from the multicast forwarding table. Valid values are from 1 to 5, and the default value is 2.

last-member-query-interval *interval* — The interval between group-specific queries. Valid values are from 1 to 5 seconds, and the default value is 1 second.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the MLD Snooping Querier for VLAN 3, and configure the query interval as 100 seconds:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config 3 querier
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld snooping vlan-config 3 querier query interval
100
```

18.10 ipv6 mld snooping (interface)

Description

The **ipv6 mld snooping** command is used to enable MLD Snooping function on the desired port. To disable this function, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 mld snooping
no ipv6 mld snooping
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable MLD Snooping on port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping
```

18.11 ipv6 mld snooping max-groups

Description

The **ipv6 mld snooping max-groups** command is used to configure the maximum number of groups that a port can join in. The **ipv6 mld snooping max-groups action** is used to configure the action that the port takes when it receives an MLD report message and the maximum number of entries is in the forwarding table. To remove the maximum group limitation and return to the default of no limitation on the specified port, please use the **no ipv6 mld**

snooping max-groups command. To return to the default action of dropping the report, please use the **no ipv6 mld snooping max-groups action** command. These commands only apply to the dynamic multicast groups.

Syntax

ipv6 mld snooping max-groups *maxgroup*

ipv6 mld snooping max-groups action { drop | replace }

no ipv6 mld snooping max-groups

no ipv6 mld snooping max-groups action

Parameter

maxgroup — Specify the maximum numbers of groups that the port can join. It ranges from 0 to 1000 and the default value is 1000.

drop — When the number of the dynamic multicast groups that a port joins has exceeded the max-group, the port will not join any new multicast group.

replace — When the number of the dynamic multicast groups that a port joins has exceeded the max-group, the newly joined multicast group will replace an existing multicast group with the lowest multicast group address.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the maximum numbers of groups that ports 1/0/2-5 can join as 10, and configure the throttling action as replace:

```
Switch(config)#interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/2-5
Switch(config-if-range)#ipv6 mld snooping max-groups 10
Switch(config-if-range)#ipv6 mld snooping max-groups action replace
```

18.12 ipv6 mld snooping immediate-leave

Description

The **ipv6 mld snooping immediate-leave** command is used to configure the Fast Leave function for port. To disable the Fast Leave function, please use **no ipv6 mld snooping immediate-leave** command.

Syntax

ipv6 mld snooping immediate-leave
no ipv6 mld snooping immediate-leave

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the Fast Leave function for port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 mld snooping immediate-leave
```

18.13 ipv6 mld profile

Description

The **ipv6 mld profile** command is used to create the configuration profile. To delete the corresponding profile, please use **no ipv6 mld profile** command.

Syntax

ipv6 mld profile *id*
no ipv6 mld profile *id*

Parameter

id—— Specify the id of the configuration profile, ranging from 1 to 999.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create the profile 1:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld profile 1
```


18.14 deny

Description

The **deny** command is used to configure the filtering mode of profile as deny.

Syntax

deny

Command Mode

Profile Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the filtering mode of profile 1 as deny:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld profile 1
Switch(config-MLD-profile)#deny
```

18.15 permit

Description

The **permit** command is used to configure the filtering mode of profile as permit.

Syntax

permit

Command Mode

Profile Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the filtering mode of profile 1 as permit:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld profile 1
Switch(config-igmp-profile)#permit
```

18.16 range

Description

The **range** command is used to configure the range of the profile's filtering multicast address. To delete the corresponding filtering multicast address, please use **no range** command. A profile contains 16 filtering IP-range entries at most.

Syntax

```
range start-ip end-ip  
no range start-ip end-ip
```

Parameter

start-ip—— Start IPv6 multicast address of the filter entry..
end-ip—— End IPv6 multicast address of the filter entry.

Command Mode

Profile Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure one of the filter multicast address entry as range ff80::1234 to ff80::1235 in profile 1:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 mld profile 1  
Switch(config-igmp-profile)#range ff80::1234 ff80::1235
```

18.17 ipv6 mld filter

Description

The **ipv6 mld filter** command is used to bind the specified profile to the interface. To delete the binding, please use **no ipv6 mld filter** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 mld filter profile-id  
no ipv6 mld filter
```

Parameter

profile-id—— Specify the profile ID, ranging from 1 to 999.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Bind profile 1 to interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 mld filter 1
```

18.18 clear ipv6 mld snooping statistics

Description

The **clear ipv6 mld snooping statistics** command is used to clear the statistics of the MLD packets.

Syntax

```
clear ipv6 mld snooping statistics
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Clear the statistics of the MLD packets:

```
Switch(config)# clear ipv6 mld snooping statistics
```

18.19 show ipv6 mld snooping

Description

The **show ipv6 mld snooping** command is used to display the global configuration of MLD Snooping.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 mld snooping
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the global configuration of MLD Snooping:

```
Switch(config)# show ipv6 mld snooping
```

18.20 show ipv6 mld snooping interface

Description

The **show ipv6 mld snooping interface** command is used to display the port configuration of MLD snooping.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 mld snooping interface [ gigabitEthernet [ port | port-list ] ]  
{ basic-config | max-groups | packet-stat }
```

```
show ipv6 mld snooping interface [ port-channel [ port-channel-list ] ]  
{ basic-config | max-groups }
```

Parameter

port — The Ethernet port number.

port-list — The list of Ethernet ports.

basic-config | max-groups | packet-stat — The related configuration information selected to display.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the MLD basic configuration configuration of all ports and port channels:

```
Switch# show ipv6 mld snooping interface basic-config
```

Display the MLD basic configuration of port 1/0/2:

```
Switch# show ipv6 mld snooping interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2  
basic-config
```

Display the MLD packet statistics of ports 1/0/1-4:

```
Switch# show ipv6 mld snooping interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1-4
packet-stat
```

18.21 show ipv6 mld snooping vlan

Description

The **show ipv6 mld snooping vlan** command is used to display VLAN information of MLD Snooping.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 mld snooping vlan [ vlan-id ]
```

Parameter

vlan-id—— The VLAN ID selected to display, ranging from 1 to 4094.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display all of the VLAN information:

```
Switch(config)# show ipv6 mld snooping vlan
```

18.22 show ipv6 mld snooping groups

Description

The **show ipv6 mld snooping groups** command is used to display multicast groups.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 mld snooping groups [ vlan { vlan-id } ] [ ipv6_multicast_addr |
count | dynamic | dynamic count | static | static count ]
```

Parameter

vlan-id——The VLAN ID selected to display the information of all multicast items.

ipv6_multicast_addr—— IPv6 address of the multicast group.

count—— The numbers of all multicast groups.

dynamic—— Display dynamic multicast groups.

dynamic count— The numbers of all dynamic multicast groups.

static— Display static multicast groups.

static count— The numbers of all static multicast groups.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display all of the multicast groups:

```
Switch(config)# show ipv6 mld snooping groups
```

18.23 show ipv6 mld profile

Description

The **show ipv6 mld profile** command is used to display the configuration information of all the profiles or a specific profile.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 mld profile [ id ]
```

Parameter

id— Specify the ID of the profile, ranging from 1 to 999.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration information of all profiles:

```
Switch(config)# show ipv6 mld profile
```

Chapter 19 MVR Commands

MVR (Multicast VLAN Registration) allows a single multicast VLAN to be shared for multicast member ports in different VLANs in IPv4 network. In IGMP Snooping, if member ports are in different VLANs, a copy of the multicast streams is sent to each VLAN that has member ports. While MVR provides a dedicated multicast VLAN to forward multicast traffic over the Layer 2 network, to avoid duplication of multicast streams for clients in different VLANs. Clients can dynamically join or leave the multicast VLAN without interfering with their relationships in other VLANs.

19.1 mvr (global)

Description

The **mvr** command is used to enable MVR globally. To disable MVR, please use **no mvr** command.

Syntax

mvr

no mvr

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable MVR globally:

```
Switch(config)# mvr
```

19.2 mvr group

Description

The **mvr group** command is used to add multicast groups to MVR. To delete multicast groups from MVR, please use **no mvr group** command. You can configure up to 511 multicast groups.

Syntax

mvr group *ip-addr* [*count*]

no mvr group *ip-addr* [*count*]

Parameter

ip-addr — The start IP address of the contiguous series of multicast groups.

count — The number of the multicast groups to be added to the MVR. Valid values are from 1 to 256, and the default value is 1.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add multicast groups 225.1.2.3 -239.1.2.5 to MVR:

```
Switch (config)# mvr group 225.1.2.3 3
```

19.3 mvr mode

Description

The **mvr mode** command is used to configure the MVR mode as compatible or dynamic. By default, it is compatible. To return to the default configuration, please use **no mvr mode** command.

Syntax

mvr mode { compatible | dynamic }

no mvr mode

Parameter

compatible — In this mode, the switch does not forward report or leave messages from the hosts to the IGMP querier. So the IGMP querier cannot learn the multicast groups membership information from the switch. You have to statically configure the IGMP querier to transmit all the required multicast streams to the switch via the multicast VLAN.

dynamic — In this mode, after receiving report or leave messages from the hosts, the switch will forward them to the IGMP querier via the multicast VLAN (with appropriate translation of the VLAN ID). So the IGMP querier can learn the multicast groups membership information through the report and leave messages, and transmit the multicast streams to the switch via the multicast VLAN according to the multicast forwarding table.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the MVR mode as dynamic:

```
Switch(config)# mvr mode dynamic
```

19.4 mvr querytime

Description

The **mvr querytime** command is used to configure the maximum time to wait for IGMP report on a receiver port before removing the port from multicast group membership. To return to the default configuration, please use **no mvr querytime** command.

Syntax

```
mvr querytime time
```

```
no mvr querytime
```

Parameter

time — The query response time. Valid values are from 1 to 100 tenths of a second, and the default value is 5 tenths of a second.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the query response time of MVR as 1 second, that is 10 tenths of a second:

```
Switch(config)# mvr querytime 10
```

19.5 mvr vlan

Description

The **mvr vlan** command is used to specify the multicast VLAN. By default, it is VLAN 1. To return to the default configuration, please use **no mvr vlan** command.

Syntax

mvr vlan *vlan-id*

no mvr vlan

Parameter

vlan-id— The ID of the multicast VLAN. Valid values are from 1 to 4094.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the multicast VLAN as VLAN 10:

```
Switch(config)# mvr vlan 10
```

19.6 mvr (interface)

Description

This command is used to enable MVR for specific interfaces. To disable MVR for the interfaces, please use **no mvr** command. By default, it is disabled.

Syntax

mvr

no mvr

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable MVR for port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#mvr
```

19.7 mvr type

Description

The **mvr type** command is used to configure the MVR port type as receiver or source. By default, the port is a non-MVR port. If you attempt to configure a non-MVR port with MVR characteristics, the operation fails. To return to the default configuration, please use **no mvr type** command.

Syntax

```
mvr type { source | receiver }
no mvr type
```

Parameter

source — Configure the uplink ports that receive and send multicast data on the multicast VLAN as source ports. Source ports should belong to the multicast VLAN.

receiver — Configure the ports that are connecting to the hosts as receiver ports. A receiver port can only belong to one VLAN, and cannot belong to the multicast VLAN.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the port 1/0/3 as a receiver port:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)#mvr type receiver
```

19.8 mvr immediate

Description

The **mvr immediate** command is used to enable the Fast Leave feature of MVR for specified port. To disable the Fast Leave feature of MVR for specific ports, please use **no mvr immediate** command.

Syntax

mvr immediate

no mvr immediate

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

Only receiver ports support Fast Leave. Before enabling Fast Leave for a port, make sure there is only a single receiver device connecting to the port.

Example

Enable the Fast Leave feature of MVR for port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)#mvr immediate
```

19.9 mvr vlan (group)

Description

This command is used to statically add ports to an MVR group. Then the ports can receive multicast traffic sent to the IP multicast address via the multicast VLAN.

Syntax

mvr vlan *vlan-id* group *ip-addr*

Parameter

vlan-id—— The ID of the multicast VLAN. Valid values are from 1 to 4094.

ip-addr—— The IP address of the multicast group.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

This command applies to only receiver ports. The switch adds or removes the receiver ports to the corresponding multicast groups by snooping the report and leave messages from the hosts. You can also statically add a receiver port to an MVR group.

Example

Add port 1/0/3 to MVR group 225.1.2.3 statically. The multicast VLAN is VLAN 10:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)#mvr vlan 10 group 225.1.2.3
```

19.10 show mvr

Description

The **show mvr** command is used to display the global configuration of MVR.

Syntax

```
show mvr
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the global configuration of mvr:

```
Switch# show mvr
```

19.11 show mvr interface

Description

The **show mvr interface** command is used to display the MVR configurations of specific interfaces.

Syntax

```
show mvr interface gigabitEthernet [port | port-list]
```

Parameter

port—The Ethernet port number.

port-list— The list of Ethernet ports.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the MVR configuration of port 1/0/3:

```
Switch# show mvr interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
```

19.12 show mvr members

Description

The **show mvr members** command is used to display the membership information of all MVR groups or the specified MVR group.

Syntax

```
show mvr members [ ip-addr ] [ status active | inactive ]
```

Parameter

ip-addr—The multicast IP address of the MVR group.

active— Display all active MVR groups.

inactive—Display all inactive MVR groups.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the membership information of all MVR groups:

```
Switch# show mvr members
```

Chapter 20 MSTP Commands

MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol), compatible with both STP and RSTP and subject to IEEE 802.1s, can disbranch a ring network. STP is to block redundant links and backup links as well as optimize paths.

20.1 debug spanning-tree

Description

The **debug spanning-tree** command is used to enable debugging of spanning-tree activities. To disable the debugging function, please use **no debug spanning-tree** command.

Syntax

debug spanning-tree { all | bpdu receive | bpdu transmit | cmpmsg | errors | flush | init | migration | proposals | roles | state | tc }

no debug spanning-tree { all | bpdu receive | bpdu transmit | cmpmsg | errors | flush | init | migration | proposals | roles | state | tc }

Parameters

all — Display all the spanning-tree debug messages.

bpdu receive — Display the debug messages of the received spanning-tree bridge protocol data unit (BPDU).

bpdu transmit — Display the debug messages of the sent spanning-tree BPDU.

cmpmsg — Display the message priority debug messages.

errors — Display the MSTP error debug messages.

flush — Display the address table flushing debug messages.

init — Display the data structure initialization debug messages.

migration — Display the version migration debug messages.

proposals — Display the MSTP handshake debug messages.

roles — Display the MSTP interface role switchling debug messages.

state — Display the MSTP interface state change debug messages.

tc — Display the MSTP topology event debug messages.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display all the spanning-tree debug messages:

```
Switch# debug spanning-tree all
```

20.2 spanning-tree (global)

Description

The **spanning-tree** command is used to enable STP function globally. To disable the STP function, please use **no spanning-tree** command.

Syntax

spanning-tree

no spanning-tree

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the STP function:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree
```

20.3 spanning-tree (interface)

Description

The **spanning-tree** command is used to enable STP function for a port. To disable the STP function, please use **no spanning-tree** command.

Syntax

spanning-tree

no spanning-tree

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the STP function for port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# spanning-tree
```

20.4 spanning-tree common-config

Description

The **spanning-tree common-config** command is used to configure the parameters of the ports for comparison in the CIST and the common parameters of all instances. To return to the default configuration, please use **no spanning-tree common-config** command. CIST (Common and Internal Spanning Tree) is the spanning tree in a switched network, connecting all devices in the network.

Syntax

```
spanning-tree common-config [ port-priority pri ] [ ext-cost ext-cost ]
[ int-cost int-cost ] [ portfast { enable | disable } ] [ point-to-point { auto | open
| close } ]
```

```
no spanning-tree common-config
```

Parameter

pri — Port Priority, which must be multiple of 16 ranging from 0 to 240. By default, the port priority is 128. Port Priority is an important criterion on determining if the port connected to this port will be chosen as the root port. In the same condition, the port with the highest priority will be chosen as the root port. The lower value has the higher priority.

ext-cost — External Path Cost, which is used to choose the path and calculate the path costs of ports in different MST regions. It is an important criterion on determining the root port. The lower value has the higher priority. It ranges from 0 to 2000000. By default, it is 0 which is mean auto.

int-cost — Internal Path Cost, which is used to choose the path and calculate the path costs of ports in an MST region. It is an important criterion on determining the root port. The lower value has the higher priority. By

default, it is automatic. It ranges from 0 to 2000000. By default, it is 0 which means auto.

portfast — Enable/ Disable Edge Port. By default, it is disabled. The edge port can transit its state from blocking to forwarding rapidly without waiting for forward delay.

point-to-point — The P2P link status, with auto, open and close options. By default, the option is auto. If the two ports in the P2P link are root port or designated port, they can transit their states to forwarding rapidly to reduce the unnecessary forward delay.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the STP function of port 1, and configure the Port Priority as 64, ExtPath Cost as 100, IntPath Cost as 100, and then enable Edge Port:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)# spanning-tree common-config port-priority 64 ext-cost
100 int-cost 100 portfast enable point-to-point open
```

20.5 spanning-tree mode

Description

The **spanning-tree mode** command is used to configure the STP mode of the switch. To return to the default configurations, please use **no spanning-tree mode** command.

Syntax

```
spanning-tree mode { stp | rstp | mstp }
no spanning-tree mode
```

Parameter

stp — Spanning Tree Protocol, the default value.
rstp — Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
mstp — Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the spanning-tree mode as mstp:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree mode mstp
```

20.6 spanning-tree mst configuration

Description

The **spanning-tree mst configuration** command is used to access MST Configuration Mode from Global Configuration Mode, as to configure the VLAN-Instance mapping, region name and revision level. To return to the default configuration of the corresponding Instance, please use **no spanning-tree mst configuration** command.

Syntax

spanning-tree mst configuration

no spanning-tree mst configuration

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enter into the MST configuration mode:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
```

```
Switch(Config-mst)#
```

20.7 instance

Description

The **instance** command is used to configure the VLAN-Instance mapping. To remove the VLAN-instance mapping or disable the corresponding instance,

please use **no instance** command. When an instance is disabled, the related mapping VLANs will be removed.

Syntax

instance *instance-id* **vlan** *vlan-id*

no instance *instance-id* [**vlan** *vlan-id*]

Parameters

instance-id — Instance ID, ranging from 1 to 8.

vlan-id — The VLAN ID selected to mapping with the corresponding instance.

Command Mode

MST Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Map the VLANs 1-100 to Instance 1:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
```

```
Switch(config-mst)# instance 1 vlan 1-100
```

Disable Instance 1, namely remove all the mapping VLANs 1-100:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
```

```
Switch(config-mst)# no instance 1
```

Remove VLANs 1-50 in mapping VLANs 1-100 for Instance 1:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
```

```
Switch(config-mst)# no instance 1 vlan 1-50
```

20.8 name

Description

The **name** command is used to configure the region name of MST instance.

Syntax

name *name*

Parameters

name — The region name, used to identify MST region. It ranges from 1 to 32 characters.

Command Mode

MST Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the region name of MST as "region1":

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
Switch(config-mst)# name region1
```

20.9 revision

Description

The **revision** command is used to configure the revision level of MST instance.

Syntax

```
revision revision
```

Parameters

revision — The revision level for MST region identification, ranging from 0 to 65535.

Command Mode

MST Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the revision level of MST as 100:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree mst configuration
Switch(config-mst)# revision 100
```

20.10 spanning-tree mst instance

Description

The **spanning-tree mst instance** command is used to configure the priority of MST instance. To return to the default value of MST instance priority, please use **no spanning-tree mst instance** command.

Syntax

spanning-tree mst instance *instance-id* **priority** *pri*

no spanning-tree mst instance *instance-id* **priority**

Parameter

instance-id—— Instance ID, ranging from 1 to 8.

pri —— MSTI Priority, which must be multiple of 4096 ranging from 0 to 61440. By default, it is 32768. MSTI priority is an important criterion on determining if the switch will be chosen as the root bridge in the specific instance.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the MST Instance 1 and configure its priority as 4096:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree mst instance 1 priority 4096
```

20.11 spanning-tree mst

Description

The **spanning-tree mst** command is used to configure MST Instance Port. To return to the default configuration of the corresponding Instance Port, please use **no spanning-tree mst** command. A port can play different roles in different spanning tree instance. You can use this command to configure the parameters of the ports in different instance IDs as well as view status of the ports in the specified instance.

Syntax

spanning-tree mst instance *instance-id*[[**port-priority** *pri*] | [**cost** *cost*]]

no spanning-tree mst instance *instance-id*

Parameter

instance-id— Instance ID, ranging from 1 to 8.

pri— Port Priority, which must be multiple of 16 ranging from 0 to 240. By default, it is 128. Port Priority is an important criterion on determining if the port will be chosen as the root port by the device connected to this port.

cost — Path Cost, ranging from 0 to 200000. The lower value has the higher priority. Its default value is 0 meaning "auto".

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the priority of port 1 in MST Instance 1 as 64, and path cost as 2000:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)# spanning-tree mst instance 1 port-priority 64 cost 2000
```

20.12 spanning-tree priority

Description

The **spanning-tree priority** command is used to configure the bridge priority. To return to the default value of bridge priority, please use **no spanning-tree priority** command.

Syntax

```
spanning-tree priority pri
no spanning-tree priority
```

Parameter

pri— Bridge priority, ranging from 0 to 61440. It is 32768 by default.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the bridge priority as 4096:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree priority 4096
```

20.13 spanning-tree timer

Description

The **spanning-tree timer** command is used to configure forward-time, hello-time and max-age of Spanning Tree. To return to the default configurations, please use **no spanning-tree timer** command.

Syntax

```
spanning-tree timer {[ forward-time forward-time ] [ hello-time hello-time ]  
[ max-age max-age ]}
```

```
no spanning-tree timer
```

Parameter

forward-time — Forward Delay, which is the time for the port to transit its state after the network topology is changed. Forward Delay ranges from 4 to 30 in seconds and it is 15 by default. Otherwise, $2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1) \geq \text{Max Age}$.

hello-time — Hello Time, which is the interval to send BPDU packets, and used to test the links. Hello Time ranges from 1 to 10 in seconds and it is 2 by default. Otherwise, $2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1) \leq \text{Max Age}$.

max-age — The maximum time the switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure, ranging from 6 to 40 in seconds. By default, it is 20.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure forward-time, hello-time and max-age for Spanning Tree as 16 seconds, 3 seconds and 22 seconds respectively:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree timer forward-time 16 hello-time 3
max-age 22
```

20.14 spanning-tree hold-count

Description

The **spanning-tree hold-count** command is used to configure the maximum number of BPDU packets transmitted per Hello Time interval. To return to the default configurations, please use **no spanning-tree hold-count** command.

Syntax

```
spanning-tree hold-count value
no spanning-tree hold-count
```

Parameter

value—— The maximum number of BPDU packets transmitted per Hello Time interval, ranging from 1 to 20 in pps. By default, it is 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the hold-count of STP as 8pps:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree hold-count 8
```

20.15 spanning-tree max-hops

Description

The **spanning-tree max-hops** command is used to configure the maximum number of hops that occur in a specific region before the BPDU is discarded. To return to the default configurations, please use **no spanning-tree max-hops** command.

Syntax

```
spanning-tree max-hops value
no spanning-tree max-hops
```

Parameter

value — The maximum number of hops that occur in a specific region before the BPDU is discarded, ranging from 1 to 40 in hop. By default, it is 20.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the max-hops of STP as 30:

```
Switch(config)# spanning-tree max-hops 30
```

20.16 spanning-tree bpdudfilter

Description

The **spanning-tree bpdudfilter** command is used to enable the BPDU filter function for a port. With the BPDU Filter function enabled, the port does not forward BPDUs from the other switches. To disable the BPDU filter function, please use **no spanning-tree bpdudfilter** command.

Syntax

```
spanning-tree bpdudfilter
```

```
no spanning-tree bpdudfilter
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the BPDU filter function for port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

```
Switch(config-if)# spanning-tree bpdudfilter
```

20.17 spanning-tree bpduflood

Description

The **spanning-tree bpduflood** command is used to enable the BPDU forward function for a port. With the function enabled, the port still can forward spanning tree BPDUs when the spanning tree function is disabled on this port. To disable the BPDU filter function, please use **no spanning-tree bpduflood** command.

Syntax

spanning-tree bpduflood

no spanning-tree bpduflood

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the BPDU forward function for port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# spanning-tree bpduflood
```

20.18 spanning-tree bpduguard

Description

The **spanning-tree bpduguard** command is used to enable the BPDU protect function for a port. With the BPDU protect function enabled, the port will set itself automatically as ERROR-PORT when it receives BPDU packets, and the port will disable the forwarding function for a while. To disable the BPDU protect function, please use **no spanning-tree bpduguard** command.

Syntax

spanning-tree bpduguard

no spanning-tree bpduguard

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the BPDU protect function for port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# spanning-tree bpduguard
```

20.19 spanning-tree guard loop

Description

The **spanning-tree guard loop** command is used to enable the Loop Protect function for a port. Loop Protect is to prevent the loops in the network brought by recalculating STP because of link failures and network congestions. To disable the Loop Protect function, please use **no spanning-tree guard loop** command.

Syntax

```
spanning-tree guard loop
no spanning-tree guard loop
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the Loop Protect function for port 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# spanning-tree guard loop
```

20.20 spanning-tree guard root

Description

The **spanning-tree guard root** command is used to enable the Root Protect function for a port. With the Root Protect function enabled, the root bridge will set itself automatically as ERROR-PORT when receiving BPDU packets with higher priority, in order to maintain the role of root ridge. To disable the Root Protect function, please use **no spanning-tree guard root** command.

Syntax

spanning-tree guard root

no spanning-tree guard root

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the Root Protect function for port 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

```
Switch(config-if)# spanning-tree guard root
```

20.21 spanning-tree guard tc

Description

The **spanning-tree guard tc** command is used to enable the TC Protect of Spanning Tree function for a port. To disable the TC Protect of Spanning Tree function, please use **no spanning-tree guard tc** command. A switch removes MAC address entries upon receiving TC-BPDUs. If a malicious user continuously sends TC-BPDUs to a switch, the switch will be busy with removing MAC address entries, which may decrease the performance and stability of the network. With the Protect of Spanning Tree function enabled, you can configure the number of TC-BPDUs in a required time, so as to avoid the process of removing MAC addresses frequently.

Syntax

spanning-tree guard tc

no spanning-tree guard tc

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the TC Protect of Spanning Tree for port 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# spanning-tree guard tc
```

20.22 spanning-tree mcheck

Description

The **spanning-tree mcheck** command is used to enable mcheck.

Syntax

spanning-tree mcheck

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable mcheck for port 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# spanning-tree mcheck
```

20.23 show spanning-tree active

Description

The **show spanning-tree active** command is used to display the active information of spanning-tree.

Syntax

show spanning-tree active

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the active information of spanning-tree:

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree active
```

20.24 show spanning-tree bridge

Description

The **show spanning-tree bridge** command is used to display the bridge parameters.

Syntax

show spanning-tree bridge [forward-time | hello-time | hold-count | max-age | max-hops | mode | priority | state]

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the bridge parameters:

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree bridge
```

20.25 show spanning-tree interface

Description

The **show spanning-tree interface** command is used to display the spanning-tree information of all ports or a specified port.

Syntax

```
show spanning-tree interface [ gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id ] [ edge | ext-cost | int-cost | mode | p2p | priority | role | state | status ]
```

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the spanning-tree information of all ports:

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree interface
```

Display the spanning-tree information of port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

Display the spanning-tree mode information of port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2 mode
```

20.26 show spanning-tree interface-security

Description

The **show spanning-tree interface-security** command is used to display the protect information of all ports or a specified port.

Syntax

```
show spanning-tree interface-security [ gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id ] [ bpdufilter | bpduflood | bpduguard | loop | root | tc ]
```

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the protect information of all ports:

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree interface-security
```

Display the protect information of port 1:

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree interface-security gigabitEthernet  
1/0/1
```

Display the interface security bpdudfilter information:

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree interface-security bpdudfilter
```

20.27 show spanning-tree mst

Description

The **show spanning-tree mst** command is used to display the related information of MST Instance.

Syntax

```
show spanning-tree mst { configuration [ digest ] | instance instance-id  
[ interface [ gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id ] ] }
```

Parameter

instance-id— Instance ID desired to show, ranging from 1 to 8.

port— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the region information and mapping information of VLAN and MST Instance:

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree mst configuration
```

Display the related information of MST Instance 1:

```
Switch(config)# show spanning-tree mst instance 1
```

Display all the ports information of MST Instance 1:

```
Switch(config)#show spanning-tree mst instance 1 interface
```

Chapter 21 LLDP Commands

LLDP function enables network devices to advertise their own device information periodically to neighbors on the same LAN. The information of the LLDP devices in the LAN can be stored by its neighbor in a standard MIB, so it is possible for the information to be accessed by a Network Management System (NMS) using SNMP.

21.1 Ildp

Description

The **lldp** command is used to enable LLDP function. To disable the LLDP function, please use **no lldp** command.

Syntax

lldp

no lldp

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable LLDP function globally:

```
Switch(config)#lldp
```

21.2 Ildp forward_message

Description

The **lldp forward_message** command is used to enable the switch to forward LLDP messages when LLDP function is disabled. To disable the LLDP messages forwarding function, please use **no lldp forward_message** command.

Syntax

lldp forward_message

no lldp forward_message

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the switch to forward LLDP messages when LLDP function is disabled globally:

```
Switch(config)#lldp forward_message
```

21.3 lldp hold-multiplier

Description

The **lldp hold-multiplier** command is used to configure the Hold Multiplier parameter. The aging time of the local information in the neighbor device is determined by the actual TTL value used in the sending LLDPDU. $TTL = \text{Hold Multiplier} * \text{Transmit Interval}$. To return to the default configuration, please use **no lldp hold-multiplier** command.

Syntax

```
lldp hold-multiplier multiplier
```

```
no lldp hold-multiplier
```

Parameter

multiplier—— Configure the Hold Multiplier parameter. It ranges from 2 to 10. By default, it is 4.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify Hold Multiplier as 5:

```
Switch(config)#lldp hold-multiplier 5
```

21.4 lldp timer

Description

The **lldp timer** command is used to configure the parameters about transmission. To return to the default configuration, please use **no lldp timer** command.

Syntax

```
lldp timer { tx-interval tx-interval / tx-delay tx-delay / reinit-delay reinit-delay / notify-interval notify-interval / fast-count fast-count }
```

```
no lldp timer { tx-interval | tx-delay | reinit-delay | notify-interval | fast-count }
```

Parameter

tx-interval — Configure the interval for the local device to transmit LLDPDU to its neighbors. The value ranges from 5 to 32768 and the default value is 30 seconds.

tx-delay — Configure a value from 1 to 8192 in seconds to specify the time for the local device to transmit LLDPDU to its neighbors after changes occur so as to prevent LLDPDU being sent frequently. By default, it is 2 seconds.

reinit-delay — This parameter indicates the amount of delay from when LLDP status becomes "disable" until re-initialization will be attempted. The value ranges from 1 to 10 and the default value is 2.

notify-interval — Specify the interval of Trap message which will be sent from local device to network management system. The value ranges from 5 to 3600 and the default value is 5 seconds.

fast-count — When the port's LLDP state transforms from Disable (or Rx_Only) to Tx&Rx (or Tx_Only), the fast start mechanism will be enabled, that is, the transmit interval will be shorten to a second, and several LLDPDUs will be sent out (the number of LLDPDUs equals this parameter). The value ranges from 1 to 10 and the default value is 3.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the Transmit Interval of LLDPDU as 45 seconds and Trap message to NMS as 120 seconds:

```
Switch(config)#lldp timer tx-interval 45
Switch(config)#lldp timer notify-interval 120
```

21.5 Ildp receive

Description

The **lldp receive** command is used to enable the designated port to receive LLDPDU. To disable the function, please use **no lldp receive** command.

Syntax

```
lldp receive
no lldp receive
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable port 1/0/1 to receive LLDPDU:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#lldp receive
```

21.6 Ildp transmit

Description

The **lldp transmit** command is used to enable the designated port to transmit LLDPDU. To disable the function, please use **no lldp transmit** command.

Syntax

```
lldp transmit
no lldp transmit
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1 to transmit LLDPDU:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#lldp transmit
```

21.7 lldp snmp-trap

Description

The **lldp snmp-trap** command is used to enable the port's SNMP notification. If enabled, the port will notify the trap event to network management system. To disable the ports' SNMP notification, please use **no lldp snmp-trap** command.

Syntax

```
lldp snmp-trap
no lldp snmp-trap
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the SNMP notification for Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#lldp snmp-trap
```


21.8 Ildp tlv-select

Description

The **lldp tlv-select** command is used to configure TLVs to be included in outgoing LLDPDU. To exclude TLVs, please use **no lldp tlv-select** command. By default, All TLVs are included in outgoing LLDPDU.

Syntax

```
lldp tlv-select { [ port-description ] [ system-capability ] [ system-description ]  
[ system-name ] [ management-address ] [ port-vlan ] [ protocol-vlan ]  
[ vlan-name ] [ link-aggregation ] [ mac-phy-cfg ] [ max-frame-size ] [ power ]  
[ all ] }
```

```
no lldp tlv-select { [ port-description ] [ system-capability ]  
[ system-description ] [ system-name ] [ management-address ] [ port-vlan ]  
[ protocol-vlan ] [ vlan-name ] [ link-aggregation ] [ mac-phy-cfg ]  
[ max-frame-size ] [ power ] [ all ] }
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Exclude "management-address" and "port-vlan-id" TLVs in LLDPDU outgoing from Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1  
Switch(config-if)# no lldp tlv-select management-address port-vlan
```

21.9 Ildp management-address

Description

The **lldp management-address** command is used to configure the port's management address to be included in management address TLV. The NMS uses management addresses to identify the devices. To delete the port's management address, please use **no lldp management address** command.

Syntax

```
lldp management-address { ip-address }  
no lldp management-address
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the port's management address as 192.168.1.100 for port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1  
Switch(config-if)# lldp management-address 192.168.0.100
```

21.10 lldp med-fast-count

Description

The **lldp med-fast-count** command is used to configure the number of the LLDP-MED frames that will be sent out. When LLDP-MED fast start mechanism is activated, multiple LLDP-MED frames will be transmitted based on this parameter. The default value is 4. To return to the default configuration, please use **no lldp med-fast-count** command.

Syntax

```
lldp med-fast-count count  
no lldp med-fast-count
```

Parameter

count — Configure the Fast Start Count parameter. It ranges from 1 to 10. By default, it is 4.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify Fast Start Count as 5:

```
Switch(config)# lldp med-fast-count 5
```

21.11 lldp med-status

Description

The **lldp med-status** command is used to enable the LLDP-MED feature for the corresponding port. After the LLDP-MED feature is enabled, the port's Admin Status will be changed to Tx&Rx. To disable the LLDP-MED feature for the corresponding port, please use **no lldp med-status** command.

Syntax

```
lldp med-status
```

```
no lldp med-status
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the LLDP-MED feature for port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

```
Switch(config-if)# lldp med-status
```

21.12 lldp med-tlv-select

Description

The **lldp med-tlv-select** command is used to configure LLDP-MED TLVs to be included in outgoing LLDPDU for the corresponding port. To exclude LLDP-MED TLVs, please use **no lldp med-tlv-select** command. By default, All TLVs are included in outgoing LLDPDU.

Syntax

```
lldp med-tlv-select { [inventory-management] [location] [network-policy]  
[power-management] [all] }
```

```
no lldp med-tlv-select { [inventory-management] [location] [network-policy]  
[power-management] [all] }
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Exclude "network policy" and "inventory" TLVs in LLDPDU outgoing from port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# no lldp med-tlv-select network-policy inventory-
management
```

21.13 Ildp med-location

Description

The `lldp med-location` command is used to configure the Location Identification TLV's content in outgoing LLDPDU of the port.

Syntax

```
lldp med-location { emergency-number identifier | civic-address
[ [ language language ] [ province-state province-state ] [ lci-county-name
county-name ] [ lci-city city ] [ street street ] [ house-number house-number ]
[ name name ] [ postal-zipcode postal-zipcode ] [ room-number room-number ]
[ post-office-box post-office-box ] [ additional additional ] [ country-code
country-code ] [ what { dhcp-server | endpoint | switch } ] ] }
```

Parameter

emergency-number — Emergency Call Service ELIN identifier, which is used during emergency call setup to a traditional CAMA or ISDN trunk-based PSAP. The length of this field ranges from 10 to 25 characters.

civic-address — The civic address is defined to reuse the relevant sub-fields of the DHCP option for civic Address based Location Configuration Information as specified by IETF.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the civic address in the Location Identification TLV's content in outgoing LLDPDU of port 1/0/2. Configure the language as English and city as London:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# lldp med-location civic-address language English Ici-city
London
```

21.14 show lldp

Description

The **show lldp** command is used to display the global configuration of LLDP.

Syntax

```
show lldp
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the global configuration of LLDP:

```
Switch#show lldp
```

21.15 show lldp interface

Description

The **show lldp interface** command is used to display LLDP configuration of the corresponding port. By default, the LLDP configuration of all the ports will be displayed.

Syntax

```
show lldp interface [ gigabitEthernet port ]
```

Parameters

port— The Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the LLDP configuration of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch#show lldp interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

21.16 show lldp local-information interface

Description

The **show lldp local-information interface** command is used to display the LLDP information of the corresponding port. By default, the LLDP information of all the ports will be displayed.

Syntax

```
show lldp local-information interface [ gigabitEthernet port]
```

Parameters

port— The Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the LLDP information of 1/0/1:

```
Switch#show lldp local-information interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

21.17 show lldp neighbor-information interface

Description

The **show lldp neighbor-information interface** command is used to display the neighbor information of the corresponding port. By default, the neighbor information of all the ports will be displayed.

Syntax

```
show lldp neighbor-information interface [ gigabitEthernet port]
```

Parameters

port—— The Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the neighbor information of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch#show lldp neighbor-information interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

21.18 show lldp traffic interface

Description

The **show lldp traffic interface** command is used to display the LLDP statistic information between the local device and neighbor device of the corresponding port. By default, the LLDP statistic information of all the ports will be displayed.

Syntax

```
show lldp traffic interface [ gigabitEthernet port]
```

Parameters

port—— The Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the LLDP statistic information of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch#show lldp traffic interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```


Chapter 22 Static Routes Commands

22.1 ip routing

Description

This **ip routing** command is used to enable IPv4 routing globally. To disable IPv4 routing, please use the **no ip routing** command.

Syntax

ip routing

no ip routing

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable IPv4 routing feature for the switch:

```
Switch(config)# ip routing
```

22.2 interface vlan

Description

This **interface vlan** command is used to create the VLAN interface. To delete the specified VLAN interface, please use the **no interface vlan** command.

Syntax

interface vlan { *vid* }

no interface vlan { *vid* }

Parameter

vid— The ID of the VLAN.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create the VLAN interface 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 2
```

22.3 interface loopback

Description

This **interface loopback** command is used to create the loopback interface. To delete the specified loopback interface, please use the **no interface loopback** command.

Syntax

```
interface loopback { id }  
no interface loopback { id }
```

Parameter

id—— The ID of the loopback interface, ranging from 1 to 64.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create the loopback interface 1:

```
Switch(config)# interface loopback 1
```

22.4 switchport

Description

This **switchport** command is used to switch the Layer 3 interface into the Layer 2 port. To switch the Layer 2 port into the Layer 3 routed port, please use the **no switchport** command.

Syntax

switchport

no switchport

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Switch port 1/0/9 into the routed port:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/9
Switch(config-if)# no switchport
```

22.5 interface range port-channel

Description

This **interface range port-channel** command is used to create multiple port-channel interfaces.

Syntax

interface range port-channel *port-channel-list*

Parameter

port-channel-list — The list of the port-channel interface, ranging from 1 to 14, in the format of 1-3, 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create the port-channel interfaces 1, 3, 4 and 5:

```
Switch(config)# interface port-channel 1,3-5
```

22.6 description

Description

This **description** command is used to add a description to the Layer 3 interface, including routed port, port-channel interface, loopback interface and VLAN interface. To clear the description of the corresponding interface, please use the **no description** command.

Syntax

description *string*

no description

Parameter

string — Content of an interface description, ranging from 1 to 32 characters.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add a description system-if to the routed port 1/0/9 :

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/9
Switch(config-if)# no switchport
Switch(config-if)# description system-if
```

22.7 shutdown

Description

This **shutdown** command is used to shut down the specified interface. The interface type include: routed port, port-channel interface, loopback interface and VLAN interface. To enable the specified interface, please use the **no shutdown** command.

Syntax

shutdown

no shutdown

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Shut down the routed port 1/0/9:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/9
Switch(config-if)# no switchport
Switch(config-if)# shutdown
```

22.8 interface port-channel

Description

This **interface port-channel** command is used to create the port-channel interface. To delete the specified port-channel interface, please use the **no interface port-channel** command.

Syntax

```
interface port-channel { port-channel-id }
no interface port-channel { port-channel-id }
```

Parameter

port-channel-id — The ID of the port-channel interface, ranging from 1 to 14.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create the port-channel interface 1:

```
Switch(config)# interface port-channel 1
```

22.9 ip route

Description

This **ip route** command is configure the static route. To clear the corresponding entry, please use the **no ip route** command.

Syntax

```
ip route { dest-address } { mask } { next-hop-address } [ distance ]
```

```
no ip route { dest-address } { mask } { next-hop-address }
```

Parameter

dest-address—— The destination IP address.

mask—— The subnet mask.

next-hop-address—— The address of the next-hop.

distance —— The distance metric of this route, ranging from 1 to 255. The smaller the distance is, the higher the priority is.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create a static route with the destination IP address as 192.168.2.0, the subnet mask as 255.255.255.0 and the next-hop address as 192.168.0.2:

```
Switch(config)# ip route 192.168.2.0 255.255.255.0 192.168.0.2
```

22.10 ipv6 routing

Description

This **ipv6 routing** command is enable the IPv6 routing feature globally. To disable IPv6 routing, please use the **no ipv6 routing** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 routing
```

```
no ipv6 routing
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable IPv6 routing globally:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 routing
```

22.11 ipv6 route

Description

This **ipv6 route** command is configure the IPv6 static route. To clear the corresponding entry, please use the **no ipv6 route** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 route { ipv6-dest-address } { next-hop-address } [ distance ]
```

```
no ipv6 route { ipv6-dest-address } { next-hop-address }
```

Parameter

ipv6-dest-address—— The IPv6 address of the destination network.

next-hop-address—— The IPv6 address of the next-hop.

distance —— The distance metric of this route, ranging from 1 to 255. The smaller the distance is, the higher the priority is.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create a static route with the destination network IP address as 3200::/64 and the next-hop address as 3100::1234:

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 route 3200::/64 3100::1234
```

22.12 show interface vlan

Description

The **show interface vlan** command is used to display the information of the specified interface VLAN.

Syntax

```
show interface vlan vid
```

Parameter

vid— The VLAN ID.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the information of VLAN 2:

```
Switch(config)#show interface vlan 2
```

22.13 show ip interface

Description

This **show ip interface** command is used to display the detailed information of the specified Layer 3 interface.

Syntax

```
show ip interface [ gigabitEthernet port / port-channel port-channel-id /  
loopback id | vlan vlan-id ]
```

Parameter

port— The port number.

port-channel-id — The ID of the port channel. Member ports in this port channel should all be routed ports.

id— The loopback interface ID.

vlan-id— The VLAN interface ID.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the detailed information of the VLAN interface 2:

```
Switch(config)# show ip interface vlan 2
```

22.14 show ip interface brief

Description

This **show ip interface brief** command is used to display the summary information of the Layer 3 interfaces.

Syntax

```
show ip interface brief
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the summary information of the Layer 3 interfaces:

```
Switch(config)# show ip interface brief
```

22.15 show ip route

Description

This **show ip route** command is used to display the route entries of the specified type.

Syntax

```
show ip route [ static | connected ]
```

Parameter

static | connected — Specify the route type. If not specified, all types of route entries will be displayed.

static: The static routes.

connected: The connected routes.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the static routes:

```
Switch(config)# show ip route static
```

22.16 show ip route specify

Description

This **show ip route specify** command is used to display the valid routing information to the specified IP address or network segments.

Syntax

```
show ip route specify { ip } [ mask ] [ longer-prefixes ]
```

Parameter

ip — Specify the destination IP address.

mask — Specify the destination IP address together with the parameter *ip*.

longer-prefixes — Specify the destination subnets that match the network segment determined by the *ip* and *mask* parameters.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the shortest route to 192.168.0.100:

```
Switch(config)# show ip route specify 192.168.0.100
```

Look up the route entry with the destination as 192.168.0.0/24:

```
Switch(config)# show ip route specify 192.168.0.0 255.255.255.0
```

Display the routes to all the subnets that belongs to 192.168.0.0/16:

```
Switch(config)# show ip route specify 192.168.0.0 255.255.0.0  
longer-prefixes
```

22.17 show ip route summary

Description

This **show ip route summary** command is used to display the summary information of the route entries classified by their sources.

Syntax

```
show ip route summary
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the summary information of route entries:

```
Switch(config)# show ip route summary
```

22.18 show ipv6 interface

Description

This command is used to display the configured IPv6 information of the management interface, including ipv6 function status, link-local address and global address, IPv6 multicast groups etc.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 interface
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IPv6 information of the management interface:

```
Switch(config)# show ipv6 interface
```

22.19 show ipv6 route

Description

This **show ipv6 route** command is used to display the IPv6 route entries of the specified type.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 route [ static | connected ]
```

Parameter

static | connected — Specify the route type. If not specified, all types of route entries will be displayed.

static: The static routes.

connected: The connected routes.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IPv6 static routes:

```
Switch(config)# show ipv6 route static
```

22.20 show ipv6 route summary

Description

This **show ipv6 route summary** command is used to display the summary information of the IPv6 route entries classified by their sources.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 route summary
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the summary information of IPv6 route entries:

```
Switch(config)# show ipv6 route summary
```

Chapter 23 IPv6 Address Configuration Commands

The IPv6 address configuration commands are provided in the Interface Configuration Mode, which includes the routed port, the port-channel interface and the VLAN interface. Enter the configuration mode of these Layer 3 interfaces and configure their IPv6 parameters.

23.1 ipv6 enable

Description

This command is used to enable the IPv6 function on the specified Layer 3 interface. IPv6 function should be enabled before the IPv6 address configuration management. By default it is enabled on VLAN interface 1. IPv6 function can only be enabled on one Layer 3 interface at a time.

If the IPv6 function is disabled, the corresponding IPv6-based modules will be invalid, for example SSHv6, SSLv6, TFTPv6 and more. To disable the IPv6 function, please use **no ipv6 enable** command.

Syntax

ipv6 enable
no ipv6 enable

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the IPv6 function on the VLAN interface 1:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 enable
```

23.2 ipv6 address autoconfig

Description

This command is used to enable the automatic configuration of the ipv6 link-local address. The switch has only one ipv6 link-local address, which can be configured automatically or manually. The general ipv6 link-local address

has the prefix as fe80::/10. IPv6 routers cannot forward packets that have link-local source or destination addresses to other links. The auto-configured ipv6 link-local address is in EUI-64 format. To verify the uniqueness of the link-local address, the manually configured ipv6 link-local address will be deleted when the auto-configured ipv6 link-local address takes effect.

Syntax

ipv6 address autoconfig

Configuration Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the automatic configuration of the ipv6 link-local address on VLAN interface 1:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 address autoconfig
```

23.3 ipv6 address link-local

Description

The **ipv6 address link-local** command is used to configure the ipv6 link-local address manually on a specified interface. To delete the configured link-local address, please use **no ipv6 address link-local** command.

Syntax

ipv6 address *ipv6-addr* **link-local**

no ipv6 address *ipv6-addr* **link-local**

Parameter

ipv6-addr — The link-local address of the interface. It should be a standardized IPv6 address with the prefix fe80::/10, otherwise this command will be invalid.

Configuration Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the link-local address as fe80::1234 on the VLAN interface 1:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 address fe80::1234 link-local
```

23.4 ipv6 address dhcp

Description

The **ipv6 address dhcp** command is used to enable the DHCPv6 Client function. When this function is enabled, the Layer 3 interface will try to obtain IP from DHCPv6 server. To delete the allocated IP from DHCPv6 server and disable the DHCPv6 Client function, please use **no ipv6 address dhcp** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 address dhcp
no ipv6 address dhcp
```

Configuration Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCP Client function on VLAN interface 1:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 address dhcp
```

23.5 ipv6 address ra

Description

This command is used to configure the interface's global IPv6 address according to the address prefix and other configuration parameters from its

received RA(Router Advertisement) message. To disable this function, please use **no ipv6 address ra** command.

Syntax

ipv6 address ra

no ipv6 address ra

Configuration Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the automatic ipv6 address configuration function to obtain IPv6 address through the RA message on VLAN interface 1:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 address ra
```

23.6 ipv6 address eui-64

Description

This command is used to manually configure a global IPv6 address with an extended unique identifier (EUI) in the low-order 64 bits on the interface. Specify only the network prefix. The last 64 bits are automatically computed from the switch MAC address. To remove a EUI-64 IPv6 address from the interface, please use the **no ipv6 address eui-64** command.

Syntax

ipv6 address *ipv6-addr* eui-64

no ipv6 address *ipv6-addr* eui-64

Parameter

ipv6-addr — Global IPv6 address with 64 bits network prefix, for example 3ffe::/64.

Configuration Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure an EUI-64 global address on the interface with the network prefix 3ffe::/64:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 address 3ffe::/64 eui-64
```

23.7 ipv6 address

Description

This command is used to manually configure a global IPv6 address on the interface. To remove a global IPv6 address from the interface, please use **no ipv6 address** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 address ipv6-addr
no ipv6 address ipv6-addr
```

Parameter

ipv6-addr — Global IPv6 address with network prefix, for example 3ffe::1/64.

Configuration Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the global address 3001::1/64 on VLAN interface 1:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1
Switch(config-if)# ipv6 address 3001::1/64
```

23.8 show ipv6 interface

Description

This command is used to display the configured ipv6 information of the management interface, including ipv6 function status, link-local address and global address, ipv6 multicast groups etc.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 interface
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the ipv6 information of the management interface:

```
Switch(config)# show ipv6 interface
```

Chapter 24 ARP Commands

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is used to resolve an IP address into an Ethernet MAC address. The switch maintains an ARP mapping table to record the IP-to-MAC mapping relations, which is used for forwarding packets. An ARP mapping table contains two types of ARP entries: dynamic and static. An ARP dynamic entry is automatically created and maintained by ARP. A static ARP entry is manually configured and maintained.

24.1 arp

Description

This **arp** command is used to add a static ARP entry. To delete the specified ARP entry, please use the **no arp** command.

Syntax

arp *ip mac type*

no arp *ip type*

Parameter

ip — The IP address of the static ARP entry.

mac — The MAC address of the static ARP entry.

type — The ARP type. Configure it as "arpa".

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create a static ARP entry with the IP as 192.168.0.1 and the MAC as 00:11:22:33:44:55:

```
Switch(config)# arp 192.168.0.1 00:11:22:33:44:55 arpa
```

24.2 clear arp-cache

Description

This **clear arp-cache** command is used to clear all the dynamic ARP entries.

Syntax

```
clear arp-cache
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Clear all the dynamic ARP entries:

```
Switch(config)# clear arp-cache
```

24.3 arp dynamicrenew

Description

This **arp dynamicrenew** command is used to automatically renew dynamic ARP entries. To disable the switch to automatically renew dynamic ARP entries, please use the **no arp dynamicrenew** command. By default, it is enabled.

Syntax

```
arp dynamicrenew
```

```
no arp dynamicrenew
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the switch to automatically renew the dynamic ARP entries:

```
Switch(config)# arp dynamicrenew
```

24.4 arp timeout

Description

This **arp timeout** command is used to configure the ARP aging time of the interface.

Syntax

arp timeout *timeout*

no arp timeout

Parameter

timeout — Specify the aging time, ranging from 10 to 3000 seconds. The default value is 1200 seconds.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the ARP aging time as 60 seconds:

```
Switch(config)# arp timeout 60
```

24.5 gratuitous-arp intf-status-up enable

Description

This **gratuitous-arp intf-status-up enable** command is used to enable the Layer 3 interface to send a gratuitous ARP packet when the interface's status becomes up.

Syntax

gratuitous-arp intf-status-up enable

no gratuitous-arp intf-status-up enable

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Enable the switch's Layer 3 interfaces to send gratuitous ARP packets when their status becomes up:

```
Switch(config)# gratuitous-arp intf-status-up enable
```

24.6 gratuitous-arp dup-ip-detected enable

Description

This **gratuitous-arp dup-ip-detected enable** command is used to enable the Layer 3 interface to send a gratuitous ARP packet when receiving a gratuitous packets of which the IP address is the same as its own.

Syntax

gratuitous-arp dup-ip-detected enable

no gratuitous-arp dup-ip-detected enable

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Enable the switch's Layer 3 interface to send gratuitous ARP packets when receiving a gratuitous packets of which the IP address is the same as its own:

```
Switch(config)# gratuitous-arp dup-ip-detected enable
```

24.7 gratuitous-arp learning enable

Description

This **gratuitous-arp learning enable** command is used to enable the Layer 3 interface to learn MAC addresses from the gratuitous ARP packets.

Syntax

gratuitous-arp learning enable

no gratuitous-arp learning enable

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Enable the Layer 3 interface to learn MAC addresses from the gratuitous ARP packets:

```
Switch(config)# gratuitous-arp learning enable
```

24.8 gratuitous-arp send-interval

Description

This **gratuitous-arp send-interval** command is used to configure the interval at which the interface periodically send the gratuitous ARP packets.

Syntax

```
gratuitous-arp send-interval interval
```

Parameter

Interval — Specify the interval at which the interface periodically send the gratuitous ARP packets. Value 0 means the interface will not send gratuitous ARP packets.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface vlan / interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Specify the interface VLAN 1 to send gratuitous ARP packets every 1 second:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1
Switch(config-if)# gratuitous-arp send-interval 1
```


24.9 ip proxy-arp

Description

The **ip proxy-arp** command is used to enable Proxy ARP function on the specified VLAN interface or routed port. To disable Proxy ARP on this interface, please use **no ip proxy-arp** command.

Syntax

```
ip proxy-arp
no ip proxy-arp
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

None

Example

Enable the Proxy ARP function on VLAN Interface 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 2
Switch(config-if)# ip proxy-arp
```

Enable the Proxy ARP function on routed port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 2
Switch(config-if)# no switchport
Switch(config-if)# ip proxy-arp
```

24.10 ip local-proxy-arp

Description

The **ip local-proxy-arp** command is used to enable Local Proxy ARP function on the specified VLAN interface or routed port. To disable Local Proxy ARP function on this interface, please use **no ip local-proxy-arp** command.

Syntax

```
ip local-proxy-arp
no ip local-proxy-arp
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (Interface vlan / interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

None

Example

Enable the Proxy ARP function on VLAN Interface 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 2
Switch(config-if)# ip local-proxy-arp
```

Enable the Proxy ARP function on routed port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 2
Switch(config-if)# no switchport
Switch(config-if)# ip local-proxy-arp
```

24.11 show arp

Description

This **show arp** command is used to display the active ARP entries. If no parameter is specified, all the active ARP entries will be displayed.

Syntax

```
show arp [ ip ] [ mac ]
```

Parameter

ip — Specify the IP address of your desired ARP entry.

mac — Specify the MAC address of your desired ARP entry.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the ARP entry with the IP as 192.168.0.2:

```
Switch(config)# show arp 192.168.0.2
```

24.12 show ip arp (interface)

Description

This **show ip arp (interface)** command is used to display the active ARP entries associated with a specified Layer 3 interface.

Syntax

```
show ip arp { gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id | vlan id }
```

Parameter

port—— Specify the number of the routed port.

port-channel-id—— Specify the ID of the port channel.

id—— Specify the VLAN interface ID.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the ARP entry associated with VLAN interface 2:

```
Switch(config)# show ip arp vlan 2
```

24.13 show ip arp summary

Description

This **show ip arp summary** command is used to display the number of the active ARP entries.

Syntax

```
show ip arp summary
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the number of the ARP entries:

```
Switch(config)# show ip arp summary
```

24.14 show gratuitous-arp

Description

This **show gratuitous arp** command is used to display the configuration of gratuitous ARP.

Syntax

```
show gratuitous-arp
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration of gratuitous ARP:

```
Switch(config)# show gratuitous-arp
```

24.15 show ip proxy-arp

Description

The **show ip proxy-arp** command is used to display the Proxy ARP status.

Syntax

```
show ip proxy-arp
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None

Example

Display the Proxy ARP status:

```
Switch(config)# show ip proxy-arp
```

Chapter 25 DHCP Server Commands

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) is a network configuration protocol for hosts on TCP/IP networks, and it provides a framework for distributing configuration information to hosts. DHCP server assigns IP addresses from specified address pools on a switch or router to DHCP clients and manages them.

25.1 service dhcp server

Description

The **service dhcp server** command is used to enable DHCP service globally. To disable DHCP server service, please use **no service dhcp server** command.

Syntax

service dhcp server
no service dhcp server

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable DHCP server service globally:

```
Switch(config)# service dhcp server
```

25.2 ip dhcp server extend-option capwap-ac-ip

Description

The **ip dhcp server extend-option capwap-ac-ip** command is used to specify the Option 138, which should be configured as the management IP address of an AC (Access Control) device. If the APs in the local network request this option, the server will inform the APs of the AC's IP address by sending a packet containing this option. To delete the Option 138, please use **no ip dhcp server extend-option capwap-ac-ip** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp server extend-option capwap-ac-ip ip-address  
no ip dhcp server extend-option capwap-ac-ip
```

Parameter

ip-address — Specify the management IP address of an AC (Access Control) device.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the remote DHCP server's IP address as 192.168.3.1:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server extend-option capwap-ac-ip 192.168.3.1
```

25.3 ip dhcp server extend-option vendor-class-id

Description

The **ip dhcp server extend-option vendor-class-id** command is used to configure the class ID of the packets from DHCP server in a different network segment. To delete the class ID settings, please use **no ip dhcp server extend-option vendor-class-id** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp server extend-option vendor-class-id class-id  
no ip dhcp server extend-option vendor-class-id
```

Parameter

class-id — Specify the class ID of the DHCP packets from another network segment.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the class ID of the DHCP packets from another network segment as 34:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server extend-option vendor-class-id 34
```

25.4 ip dhcp server exclude-address

Description

The **ip dhcp server exclude-address** command is used to specify the reserved IP addresses which are forbidden to allocate, such as the gateway address, the network segment broadcast address, the server address etc. To delete the reserved IP addresses, please use **no ip dhcp server exclude-address** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp server exclude-address start-ip-address end-ip-address  
no ip dhcp server exclude-address start-ip-addr end-ip-address
```

Parameter

start-ip-address — Specify the start IP address of the reserved IP pool.

end-ip-address — Specify the end IP address of the reserved IP pool. Only one IP address will be reserved if the end IP address and the start IP address are the same.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the reserved IP addresses from 192.168.1.1 to 192.168.1.9:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server exclude-address 192.168.1.1 192.168.1.9
```

25.5 ip dhcp server pool

Description

The **ip dhcp server pool** command is used to create the address pool of DHCP Server and enter the dhcp configuration mode. To delete the address pool, please use **no ip dhcp server pool** command.

Syntax

ip dhcp server pool *pool-name*
no ip dhcp server pool *pool-name*

Parameter

pool-name — Specify the address pool name, ranging from 1 to 8 characters.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create the address pool of name POOL1:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool POOL1
```

25.6 ip dhcp server ping timeout

Description

The **ip dhcp server ping timeout** command is used to specify the timeout of PING process. To resume the default value, please use **no ip dhcp server ping timeout** command.

Syntax

ip dhcp server ping timeout *value*
no ip dhcp server ping timeout

Parameter

value — Specify the timeout value, ranging from 100 to 10000ms. The default value is 100ms.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the timeout of PING as 200ms:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server ping timeout 200
```

25.7 ip dhcp server ping packets

Description

The **ip dhcp server ping packets** command is used to specify the number of PING packets sent. If this value is set to 0, the PING process will be disabled. To resume the default value, please use **no ip dhcp server ping packets** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp server ping packets num
```

Parameter

num — Specify the PING packets' number, ranging from 0 to 10. By default it's 1.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the PING packets' number as 2:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server ping packets 2
```

25.8 network

Description

The **network** command is used to specify the address and subnet of the network pool.

Syntax

```
network network-address subnet-mask
```

Parameter

network-address — Specify the network address of the pool, with the format A.B.C.D. All the IP addresses in the same subnet are allocatable except the reserved addresses and specific addresses.

subnet-mask — Specify the subnet mask of the pool, with the format A.B.C.D.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the address pool "product" as 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool product
```

```
Switch(config-dhcp)# network 192.168.1.0 255.255.255.0
```

25.9 lease

Description

The **lease** command is used to specify the lease time of the address pool.

Syntax

```
lease lease-time
```

Parameter

lease-time — Specify the lease time of the pool, ranging from 1 to 2880 minutes. The default value is 120 minutes.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the lease time of address pool "product" as 10 minutes:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool product
```

25.10 address hardware-address

Description

The **address hardware-address** command is used to reserve the static address bound with hardware address in the address pool. To delete the binding, please use **no address hardware-address**.

Syntax

```
address ip-address hardware-address hardware-address hardware-type  
{ ethernet | ieee802 }  
no address ip-address
```

Parameter

ip-address — Specify the static binding IP address.

hardware-address — Specify the hardware address, in the format XX:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX.

ethernet | ieee802 — Specify the hardware type.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Reserve the IP address 192.168.0.10 in the address pool "product" for the device with the MAC address as 5e:4c:a6:31:24:01 and the hardware type as ethernet:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool product  
Switch(config-dhcp)# address 192.168.0.10 hardware-address  
5e:4c:a6:31:24:01 hardware-type ethernet
```

25.11 address client-identifier

Description

The **address client-identifier** command is used to specify the static address bound with client ID in the address pool. To delete the binding, please use **no address** command.

Syntax

```
address ip-address client-identifier client-id[ascii]  
no address ip-address
```

Parameter

ip-address—— Specify the static binding IP address.
client-id—— Specify the client ID, in the format of hex value.
ascii —— The client ID is entered with ASCII characters.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Reserve the IP address 192.168.0.10 in the address pool "product" for the device with the client ID as abc in ASCII:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp pool product  
Switch(dhcp-config)# address 192.168.0.10 client-identifier abc ascii
```

25.12 default-gateway

Description

The **default-gateway** command is used to specify the default gateway of the address pool. To delete the configuration, please use **no default-gateway**.

Syntax

```
default-gateway gateway-list  
no default-gateway
```

Parameter

gateway-list — Specify the gateway list, with the format of A.B.C.D,E.F.G.H. At most 8 gateways can be configured, separated by comma.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the address pool product's default gateways as 192.168.0.1 and 192.168.1.1:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool product
Switch(dhcp-config)# default-gateway 192.168.0.1,192.168.1.1
```

25.13 dns-server

Description

The **dns-server** command is used to specify the DNS server of the address pool. To delete this configuration, please use **no dns-server** command.

Syntax

```
dns-server dns-list
no dns-server
```

Parameter

dns-list — Specify the DNS server list, with the format of A.B.C.D,E.F.G.H. At most 8 DNS servers can be configured, separated by comma.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the address pool's DNS servers as 192.168.0.1 and 192.168.1.1:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool product
```

```
Switch(config-dhcp)# dns-server 192.168.0.1,192.168.1.1
```

25.14 netbios-name-server

Description

The **netbios-name-server** command is used to specify the Netbios server's IP address. To delete the Netbios servers, please use **no netbios-name-server** command.

Syntax

```
netbios-name-server NBNS-list  
no netbios-name-server
```

Parameter

NBNS-list — Specify the Netbios server list, with the format of A.B.C.D,E.F.G.H. At most 8 Netbios servers can be configured, separated by comma.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the address pool's Netbios servers as 192.168.0.1 and 192.168.1.1:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool product  
Switch(config-dhcp)# netbios-name-server 192.168.0.1,192.168.1.1
```

25.15 netbios-node-type

Description

The **netbios-node-type** command is used to specify the Netbios server's node type. To delete the node type settings, please use **no netbios-node-type** command.

Syntax

```
netbios-node-type type  
no netbios-node-type
```

Parameter

type—— Specify the node type as b-node, h-node, m-node or p-node.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the address pool's Netbios server type as b-node:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool product
Switch(config-dhcp)# netbios-node-type b-node
```

25.16 next-server

Description

The **next-server** command is used to specify the next DHCP server's address during the DHCP boot process. To delete the next server, please use **no next-server** command.

Syntax

```
next-server ip-address
next-server
```

Parameter

ip-address—— Specify the IP address of the next server.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the next server's IP address as 192.168.2.1:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool product
Switch(config-dhcp)# next-server 192.168.2.1
```


25.17 domain-name

Description

The **domain-name** command is used to specify the domain name for the DHCP client. To delete the domain name, please use **no domain-name** command.

Syntax

domain-name *domainname*
no domain-name

Parameter

domainname—— Specify the domain name for the DHCP client.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the DHCP client's domain name as edu:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool product
Switch(config-dhcp)# domain-name edu
```

25.18 bootfile

Description

The **bootfile** command is used to specify the name of the DHCP client's bootfile. To delete the bootfile, please use **no bootfile** command.

Syntax

bootfile *file-name*
no bootfile

Parameter

file-name—— Specify the name of the DHCP client's bootfile.

Command Mode

DHCP Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the name of the DHCP client's bootfile as boot1:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp server pool product
Switch(config-dhcp)# bootfile boot1
```

25.19 show ip dhcp server status

Description

The **show ip dhcp server status** command is used to display the status of the DHCP service.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp server status
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the status of DHCP service:

```
Switch(config)# show ip dhcp server status
```

25.20 show ip dhcp server statistics

Description

The **show ip dhcp server statistics** command is used to display the DHCP packets received and sent by DHCP server.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp server statistics
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the statistics of DHCP packets received and sent by the DHCP server:

```
Switch(config)# show ip dhcp server statistics
```

25.21 show ip dhcp server extend-option

Description

The **show ip dhcp server extend-option** command is used to display the configuration of the remote DHCP servers.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp server extend-option
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configurations of the remote DHCP servers:

```
Switch(config)# show ip dhcp server extend-option
```

25.22 show ip dhcp server pool

Description

The **show ip dhcp server pool** command is used to display the configuration of the address pool.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp server pool
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configured address pool:

```
Switch(config)# show ip dhcp server pool
```

25.23 show ip dhcp server excluded-address

Description

The **show ip dhcp server excluded-address** command is used to display the configuration of reserved addresses.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp server excluded-address
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configured reserved addresses:

```
Switch(config)# show ip dhcp server excluded-address
```

25.24 show ip dhcp server manual-binding

Description

The **show ip dhcp server manual-binding** command is used to display the configuration of static binding address.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp server manual-binding
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configured static binding address:

```
Switch(config)# show ip dhcp server manual-binding
```

25.25 show ip dhcp server binding

Description

The **show ip dhcp server binding** command is used to display the binding entries.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp server binding [ ip ip-address ]
```

Parameter

ip-address—— Specify the binding IP address.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the address binding entries:

```
Switch(config)# show ip dhcp server binding
```

25.26 clear ip dhcp server statistics

Description

The **clear ip dhcp server statistics** command is used to clear the statistics information of DHCP packets.

Syntax

```
clear ip dhcp server statistics
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Clear the packet statistics:

```
Switch(config)# clear ip dhcp server statistics
```

25.27 clear ip dhcp server binding

Description

The **clear ip dhcp server binding** command is used to clear the binding information.

Syntax

```
clear ip dhcp server binding [ ip-address ]
```

Parameter

ip-address—— Specify the binding IP address.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Clear all the binding addresses:

```
Switch(config)# clear ip dhcp server binding
```

Chapter 26 DHCP Relay Commands

A DHCP Relay agent is a Layer 3 device that forwards DHCP packets between clients and servers. DHCP Relay forward requests and replies between clients and servers when they are not on the same physical subnet.

26.1 service dhcp relay

Description

The **service dhcp relay** command is used to enable DHCP Relay function globally. To disable DHCP Relay function, please use **no service dhcp relay** command.

Syntax

service dhcp relay
no service dhcp relay

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable DHCP Relay function globally:

```
Switch(config)# service dhcp relay
```

26.2 ip dhcp relay hops

Description

The **ip dhcp relay hops** command is used to specify the maximum hops (DHCP Relay agent) that the DHCP packets can be relayed. To restore the default value, please use **no service dhcp relay hops** command.

Syntax

ip dhcp relay hops *hops*
no ip dhcp relay hops

Parameter

hops —Specify the maximum hops (DHCP Relay agent) that the DHCP packets can be relayed. If a packet's hop count is more than the value you set here, the packet will be dropped. The valid value ranges from the 1 to 16, and the default value is 4.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the maximum number of relay hops as 6:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp relay hops 6
```

26.3 ip dhcp relay time

Description

The **ip dhcp relay time** command is used to specify the DHCP relay time threshold. DHCP relay time is the time elapsed since client began address acquisition or renewal process. When the elapsed time of the DHCP packet is greater than the value set here, the DHCP packet will be dropped by the switch. To restore the default value, please use **no service dhcp relay time** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp relay time time  
no ip dhcp relay time
```

Parameter

time —Specify the DHCP relay time threshold. The valid value ranges from 1 to 65535. The default value is 0, which means the switch will not examine this field of the DHCP packets.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the DHCP Relay time as 30 seconds:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp relay time 30
```

26.4 ip helper-address

Description

The **ip helper-address** command is used to add DHCP Server address to the Layer 3 interface. To delete the server address, please use **no ip helper-address** command.

Syntax

```
ip helper-address ip-address  
no ip helper-address [ ip-address ]
```

Parameter

ip-address — DHCP Server address.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add DHCP Server address 192.168.2.1 to interface VLAN 1:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1  
Switch(config-if)# ip helper-address 192.168.2.1
```

26.5 ip dhcp relay information

Description

The **ip dhcp relay information** command is used to enable option 82 support in DHCP Relay. To disable this function, please use **no ip dhcp relay information** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp relay information  
no ip dhcp relay information
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet/interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable option 82 support in DHCP Relay for port 2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

```
Switch(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information
```

26.6 ip dhcp relay information strategy

Description

The **ip dhcp relay information strategy** command is used to specify the operation for the Option 82 field of the DHCP request packets from the Host. To restore to the default option, please use **no ip dhcp relay information strategy** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp relay information strategy { drop | keep | replace }  
no ip dhcp relay information strategy
```

Parameter

drop | keep | replace —The operations for Option 82 field of the DHCP request packets from the Host. The default operation is keep.

drop: Discard the packet with the Option 82 field.

keep: Keep the Option 82 field in the packet.

replace: Replace the option 82 field with the system option defined by the switch.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the option 82 strategy as replace to replace the Option 82 field with the local parameter on receiving the DHCP request packet for port 2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information strategy replace
```

26.7 ip dhcp relay information format

Description

The **ip dhcp relay information format** command is used to select the format of option 82 sub-option value field. To restore to the default option, please use **no ip dhcp relay information format** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp relay information format { normal | private }
no ip dhcp relay information format
```

Parameter

normal | private — The format type of option 82 sub-option value field.

normal: Indicates that the format of sub-option value field is TLV (type-length-value).

private: Indicates that the format of sub-option value field is the value you configure for the related sub-option.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Select the format of option 82 sub-option value field as TLV (type-length-value) for port 2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)#ip dhcp relay information format normal
```

26.8 ip dhcp relay information circuit-id

Description

The **ip dhcp relay information circuit-id** command is used to specify the custom circuit ID when option 82 customization is enabled. To clear the circuit ID, please use **no ip dhcp relay information circuit-id** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp relay information circuit-id circuitID  
no ip dhcp relay information circuit-id
```

Parameter

circuitID—— Specify the circuit ID, ranging from 1 to 64 characters.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the circuit ID as "TP-Link" for port 2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2  
Switch(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information circuit-id TP-Link
```

26.9 ip dhcp relay information remote-id

Description

The **ip dhcp relay information remote-id** command is used to specify the custom remote ID when option 82 customization is enabled. To clear the remote ID, please use **no ip dhcp relay information remote-id** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp relay information remote-id remoteID  
no ip dhcp relay information remote-id
```

Parameter

remoteID—— Specify the remote ID, ranging from 1 to 64 characters.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the remote ID as "TP-Link" for port 2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

```
Switch(config-if)# ip dhcp relay information remote-id TP-Link
```

26.10 ip dhcp relay default-interface

Description

The **ip dhcp relay default-interface** command is used to configure default relay agent interface. When the switch works at DHCP VLAN Relay mode and there is no IP interface in the VLAN, the switch uses the IP of default relay agent interface to fill in the relay agent IP address field of DHCP packets. To delete the default relay agent interface use **no ip dhcp relay default-interface**.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp relay default-interface  
no ip dhcp relay default-interface
```

Command mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure interface VLAN 1 as the default relay agent interface:

```
Switch(config)# interface vlan 1
```

```
Switch(config-if)# ip dhcp relay default-interface
```

26.11 ip dhcp relay vlan

Description

The **ip dhcp relay vlan** command is used to add DHCP server address to specified VLAN. If there is an IP interface in the VLAN and it has configured a DHCP server address at the interface level, then the configuration at the interface level has higher priority. In this case, the DHCP server configured on the VLAN will not be used to forward the DHCP packets. To delete the DHCP server address use **no ip dhcp relay vlan**.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp relay vlan vidhelper-address ip-address  
no ip dhcp relay vlan vidhelper-address [ip-address]
```

Parameter

vid—— VLAN ID.

ip-address—— DHCP Server address.

Command mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add DHCP server address 192.168.2.1 to VLAN 1:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp relay vlan 1 helper-address 192.168.2.1
```

26.12 show ip dhcp relay

Description

The **show ip dhcp relay** command is used to display the global status and Option 82 configuration of DHCP Relay.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp relay
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration of DHCP Relay:

```
Switch(config)# show ip dhcp relay
```

Chapter 27 DHCP L2 Relay Commands

27.1 ip dhcp l2relay

Description

The **ip dhcp l2relay** command is used to enable DHCP L2 Relay function globally. To disable DHCP L2 Relay function, please use **no ip dhcp l2relay** command.

Syntax

ip dhcp l2relay
no ip dhcp l2relay

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable DHCP L2 Relay function globally:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp l2relay
```

27.2 ip dhcp l2relay vlan

Description

The **ip dhcp l2relay vlan** command is used to enable DHCP L2 relay in the specified VLAN. To disable DHCP L2 Relay in the specific vlan, please use **no ip dhcp l2relay vlan** command.

Syntax

ip dhcp l2relay vlan *vlan-range*
no ip dhcp l2relay vlan *vlan-range*

Parameter

vlan-range—— Specify the vlan to be enabled with DHCP L2 relay.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable DHCP L2 Relay for VLAN 2:

```
Switch(config)# ip dhcp l2relay vlan 2
```

27.3 ip dhcp l2relay information

Description

The **ip dhcp l2relay information** command is used to enable option 82 support in DHCP Relay. To disable this function, please use **no ip dhcp l2relay information** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp l2relay information  
no ip dhcp l2relay information
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable option 82 support in DHCP Relay for port 2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2  
Switch(config-if)# ip dhcp l2relay information
```

27.4 ip dhcp l2relay information strategy

Description

The **ip dhcp l2relay information strategy** command is used to specify the operation for the Option 82 field of the DHCP request packets from the Host. To restore to the default option, please use **no ip dhcp l2relay information strategy** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp l2relay information strategy { drop | keep | replace }  
no ip dhcp l2relay information strategy
```

Parameter

drop | keep | replace — The operations for Option 82 field of the DHCP request packets from the Host. The default operation is keep.

drop: Discard the packet with the Option 82 field.

keep: Keep the Option 82 field in the packet.

replace: Replace the option 82 field with the system option defined by the switch.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the option 82 strategy as replace to replace the Option 82 field with the local parameter on receiving the DHCP request packet for port 2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2  
Switch(config-if)# ip dhcp l2relay information strategy replace
```

27.5 ip dhcp l2relay information format

Description

The **ip dhcp l2relay information format** command is used to select the format of option 82 sub-option value field. To restore to the default option, please use **no ip dhcp l2relay information format** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp l2relay information format { normal | private }  
no ip dhcp l2relay information format
```

Parameter

normal | private — The format type of option 82 sub-option value field.

normal: Indicates that the format of sub-option value field is TLV (type-length-value).

private: Indicates that the format of sub-option value field is the value you configure for the related sub-option.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Select the format of option 82 sub-option value field as TLV (type-length-value) for port 2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)#ip dhcp l2relay information format normal
```

27.6 ip dhcp l2relay information circuit-id

Description

The **ip dhcp l2relay information circuit-id** command is used to specify the custom circuit ID when option 82 customization is enabled. To clear the circuit ID, please use **no ip dhcp l2relay information circuit-id** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp l2relay information circuit-id circuitID
no ip dhcp l2relay information circuit-id
```

Parameter

circuitID—— Specify the circuit ID, ranging from 1 to 64 characters.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the circuit ID as "TP-Link" for port 2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# ip dhcp I2relay information circuit-id TP-Link
```

27.7 ip dhcp I2relay information remote-id

Description

The **ip dhcp I2relay information remote-id** command is used to specify the custom remote ID when option 82 customization is enabled. To clear the remote ID, please use **no ip dhcp I2relay information remote-id** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp I2relay information remote-id remoteID
no ip dhcp I2relay information remote-id
```

Parameter

remoteID—— Specify the remote ID, ranging from 1 to 64 characters.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the remote ID as "TP-Link" for port 2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# ip dhcp I2relay information remote-id TP-Link
```

27.8 show ip dhcp I2relay

Description

The **show ip dhcp I2relay** command is used to display the global status and Option 82 configuration of DHCP Relay.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp I2relay
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration of DHCP Relay:

```
Switch(config)# show ip dhcp l2relay
```

27.9 show ip dhcp l2relay interface

Description

The **show ip dhcp l2relay interface** command is used to display the DHCP L2 Relay status for the ports.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp l2relay interface [ gigabitEthernet port | port-channel  
port-channel-id]
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DHCP L2 Relay configuration of port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)# show ip dhcp l2relay interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

Chapter 28 QoS Commands

QoS (Quality of Service) function is used to optimize the network performance. It provides you with network service experience of a better quality. The switch implements three priority modes based on port, on 802.1p and on DSCP.

28.1 qos trust mode

Description

The **qos trust mode** command is used to configure the trust mode of CoS (Class of Service) function for the ports. The default trust mode is trust port priority.

Syntax

```
qos trust mode { dot1p | dscp | untrust }
```

Parameter

dot1p— Trust 802.1p mode. In this mode, data will be classified into different services based on the 802.1p priority.

dscp— Trust dscp mode. In this mode, data will be classified into different services based on the dscp priority.

untrust— Trust port mode. In this mode, data will be classified into different services based on the based on the port priority.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the trust mode of port 1/0/3 as dscp:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# qos trust mode dscp
```

28.2 qos port-priority

Description

The **qos port-priority** command is used to configure the port to 802.1p priority mapping for the desired port. To return to the default configuration, please use **no qos port-priority** command. When Port Priority is enabled, the packets will be mapped to different priority queues based on the ingress ports.

Syntax

```
qos port-priority { dot1p-priority }  
no qos port-priority
```

Parameter

dot1p-priority — The 802.1p priority that the packets will be mapped to from the desired port. It ranges from 0 to 7, which represent 802.1p priority 0–7 respectively. By default, the priority is 0.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the priority of port 5 as 3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5  
Switch(config-if)# qos port-priority 3
```

28.3 qos cos-map

Description

The **qos cos-map** command is used to configure 802.1p to queue mapping globally. To return to the default configuration, please use **no qos cos-map** command. When 802.1P Priority is enabled, the packets with 802.1Q tag are mapped to different priority levels based on 802.1P priority.

Syntax

```
qos cos-map { dot1p-priority } { tc-queue }  
no qos cos-map
```

Parameter

dot1p-priority — The value of 802.1p priority. It ranges from 0 to 7, which represent 802.1p priority 0–7 respectively.

tc-queue — The number of TC queue that the 80.1p priority will be mapped to. It ranges from 0 to 7.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Map the 802.1p priority 5 to TC-2:

```
Switch (config)# qos cos-map 5 2
```

28.4 qos dot1p-remap

Description

The **qos dot1p-remap** command is used to configure the 802.1p to 802.1p mappings. To return to the default configuration, please use **no qos dot1p-remap** command. When 802.1p remap is configured, the packets with the specific 802.1p priority will tagged with the desired new 802.1p priority.

Syntax

```
qos dot1p-remap { dot1p-priority } { new-dot1p-priority }  
no qos dot1p-remap
```

Parameter

dot1p-priority — The original 802.1p priority. It ranges from 0 to 7, which represent 802.1p priority 0–7 respectively.

new-dot1p-priority — The new 802.1p priority. It ranges from 0 to 7.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Remap 802.1p priority 5 to 802.1p priority 6:

```
Switch(config)#qos dot1p-remap 5 6
```

28.5 qos dscp-map

Description

The **qos dscp-map** command is used to configure the DSCP to 802.1p mapping. To return to the default configuration, please use **no qos dscp-map** command. DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) is a new definition to IP ToS field given by IEEE. This field is used to divide IP datagram into 64 priorities. When DSCP Priority is enabled, IP datagram are mapped to different priority levels based on DSCP priority.

Syntax

```
qos dscp-map { dscp-value-list } { dot1p-priority }
```

```
no qos dscp-map
```

Parameter

dscp-value-list — The DSCP value list in the format of "1-3,5,7". The valid values are from 0 to 63.

dot1p-priority — The 802.1p priority to which the DSCP priority will be mapped. It ranges from 0 to 7, which represent 802.1p priority 0–7 respectively. By default, the priority is 0.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Map DSCP Priority 5 to 802.1p priority 2:

```
Switch(config)#qos dscp-map 5 2
```

28.6 qos dscp-remap

Description

The **qos dscp-remap** command is used to configure the DSCP to DSCP mappings. To return to the default configuration, please use **no qos dscp-remap** command. When DSCP remap is configured, the packets with the specific DSCP priority will be changed to the desired new DSCP priority.

Syntax

```
qos queue dscp-map { dscp-value-list } { dscp-remap-value }
```

```
no qos queue dscp-map
```

Parameter

Dscp-value-list—The original DSCP value list in the format of "1-3,5,7". The valid values are from 0 to 63.

Dscp-remap-value— The new DSCP value, which ranges from 0 to 63.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Map DSCP values 10-12 to DSCP value 2:

```
Switch(config)# qos dscp-remap 10-12 2
```

28.7 qos queue mode

Description

The **qos queue mode** command is used to configure the Scheduler Mode. When the network is congested, the program that many packets complete for resources must be solved, usually in the way of queue scheduling. The switch will control the forwarding sequence of the packets according to the priority

queues and scheduling algorithms you set. On this switch, the priority levels are labeled as TC0, TC1, TC2 ... TC7.

Syntax

```
qos queue { tc-queue } mode { sp | wrr } [ weight weight ]
```

Parameter

tc-queue — The egress queue ID. It ranges from 0 to 7, which represents TC queue from TC0 to TC7 respectively.

sp — Strict-Priority Mode. In this mode, the queue with higher priority will occupy the whole bandwidth. Packets in the queue with lower priority are sent only when the queue with higher priority is empty.

wrr — Weight Round Robin Mode. In this mode, packets in all the queues are sent in order based on the weight value for each queue. If you select this mode, you need to specify the queue weight at the same time.

weight — Configure the weight value of the specified TC queue. When the scheduler mode is specified as WRR, the weight value ranges from 1 to 127. The 8 queues will take up the bandwidth according to their ratio.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the Scheduler Mode of TC1 as WRR and set the queue weight as 10 for port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)# qos queue 1 mode wrr weight 10
```

28.8 show qos cos-map

Description

The **show qos cos-msp** command is used to display the 802.1p priority to TC queue mappings.

Syntax

```
show qos cos-map
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the 802.1p to queue mappings:

```
Switch# show qos cos-map
```

28.9 show qos dot1p-remap

Description

The **show qos dot1p-remap interface** command is used to display the 802.1p priority to 802.1p priority mappings.

Syntax

```
show qos dot1p-remap
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IEEE 802.1P remap configuration:

```
Switch# show qos dot1p-remap
```

28.10 show qos dscp-map

Description

The **show qos dscp-map** command is used to display the DSCP priority configuration.

Syntax

```
show qos dscp-map
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DSCP priority configuration:

```
Switch# show qos dscp-map
```

28.11 show qos dscp-remap

Description

The **show qos dscp-remap** command is used to display the DSCP priority to DSCP priority mappings.

Syntax

```
show qos dscp-remap
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DSCP to DSCP mappings:

```
Switch# show qos dscp-remap
```

28.12 show qos port-priority interface

Description

The **show qos port-priority interface** command is used to display the port to 802.1p priority mappings for the ports.

Syntax

```
show qos port-priority interface [fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |  
ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id]
```

Parameter

port — The port number.

port-channel-id — The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the port to 802.1p priority mappings for all the ports:

```
Switch# show qos port-priority interface
```

28.13 show qos trust interface

Description

The **show qos trust interface** command is used to display the trust mode of the ports.

Syntax

```
show qos trust interface [fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |  
ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id]
```

Parameter

port— The port number.

port-channel-id— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the trust mode of all the ports:

```
Switch# show qos trust interface
```

28.14 show qos queue interface

Description

The **show qos queue interface** command is used to display the scheduler settings of the ports.

Syntax

```
show qos queue interface [fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |  
ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id]
```

Parameter

port—— The port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the scheduler settings of all the ports:

```
Switch# show qos queue interface
```

Chapter 29 Bandwidth Control Commands

Bandwidth Control functions to control the traffic rate and traffic threshold on each port to ensure network performance. Rate limit functions to limit the ingress/egress traffic rate on each port. Storm Control function allows the switch to monitor broadcast packets, multicast packets and Unknown unicast frames in the network.

29.1 storm-control rate-mode

Description

The **storm-control rate-mode** command is used to configure the storm control mode of the interface. To return to the default configuration, please use **no storm-control rate-mode** command.

Syntax

```
storm-control rate-mode { kbps | ratio }  
no storm-control rate-mode
```

Parameter

kbps — Select the storm control mode of the interface as kbps. The switch will limit the maximum speed of the specific kinds of traffic in kilo-bits per second.

ratio — Select the storm control mode of the interface as ratio. The switch will limit the percentage of bandwidth utilization for specific kinds of traffic.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

This command should be used along with the [storm-control](#) command to enable the storm control function and specify the detailed parameters.

Example

Set the storm control mode as kbps on port 1/0/5:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5  
Switch(config-if)# storm-control rate-mode kbps
```


29.2 storm-control

Description

The **storm-control** command is used to enable the broadcast, multicast, or unknown unicast storm control function and to set threshold levels on an interface. To return to the default configuration, please use **no storm-control** command.

Syntax

```
storm-control { broadcast | multicast | unicast } { rate }
```

```
no storm-control { broadcast | multicast | unicast }
```

Parameter

broadcast | multicast | unicast — Select the mode of the storm control on the interface.

rate — Specify the bandwidth for receiving packets on the port. The specified type of packet traffic exceeding the bandwidth will be processed according to the configuration of **storm-control exceed** command. For kbps, the rate ranges from 1 to 1000000 kbps. For ratio, the rate ranges from 1 to 100 percent.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

Before you configure the storm-control type as kbps or ratio, please ensure that the port is not in pps mode.

Example

Configure the broadcast storm control rate as 1024 kbps on port 1/0/5:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
Switch(config-if)# storm-control rate-mode kbps
Switch(config-if)# storm-control broadcast 1024
```

29.3 storm-control exceed

Description

The **storm-control exceed** command is used to configure the action that the switch will perform when the storm exceeds the defined limit on an interface.

Syntax

```
storm-control exceed { drop | shutdown } [ revocer-time time ]
```

Parameter

drop — Set the Action as Drop. The port will drop the subsequent packets when the traffic exceeds the limit.

shutdown — Set the Action as Shutdown. The port will be shutdown when the traffic exceeds the limit.

time — Specify the recover time for the port. It takes effect only when the action is set as shutdown. The valid values are from 0 to 3600 and the default value is 0. When the port is shutdown, it can recover to its normal state after the recover time passed. If the recover time is specified as 0, which means the port will not recover to its normal state automatically and you can recover the port manually using **storm-control recover** command.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the action as drop on port 1/0/5:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
Switch(config-if)# storm-control exceed drop
```

29.4 storm-control recover

Description

The **storm-control recover** command is used to recover the port manually after the port is shutdown because of the storm. When the recover time is specified as 0, the port will not recover to its normal state automatically. In this condition, you need to use this command to recover the port manually.

Syntax

storm-control recover

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Recover port 1/0/5 manually:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
```

```
Switch(config-if)# storm-control recover
```

29.5 bandwidth

Description

The **bandwidth** command is used to configure the bandwidth limit for an Ethernet port. To disable the bandwidth limit, please use **no bandwidth** command.

Syntax

bandwidth {[*ingress ingress-rate*] [*egress egress-rate*]}

no bandwidth { all | ingress | egress }

Parameter

ingress-rate — Specify the bandwidth for receiving packets. Range: 1–1000000Kbps for the gigaport and 1–100000Kbps for the fast port.

egress-rate — Specify the bandwidth for sending packets. Range: 1–1000000Kbps for the gigaport and 1–100000Kbps for the fast port.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the ingress-rate as 5120Kbps and egress-rate as 1024Kbps for port 1/0/5:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
Switch(config-if)# bandwidth ingress 5120 egress 1024
```

29.6 show storm-control

Description

The **show storm-control** command is used to display the storm-control information of Ethernet ports.

Syntax

```
show storm-control interface [ fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port-list
ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id-list ]
```

Parameter

port-list——The list of Ethernet ports.

port-channel-id-list——The list of port channels.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the storm-control information of port 4, 5, 6, and 7:

```
Switch(config)# show storm-control interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/4-7
```

29.7 show bandwidth

Description

The **show bandwidth** command is used to display the bandwidth-limit information of Ethernet ports.

Syntax

```
show bandwidth interface [ fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port-list
ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id-list ]
```

Parameter

port-list——The list of Ethernet ports.

port-channel-id-list— The list of port channels.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the bandwidth-limit information of port 1/0/4:

```
Switch(config)# show bandwidth interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/4
```

Chapter 30 Voice VLAN Commands

Voice VLANs are configured specially for voice data stream. By configuring Voice VLANs and adding the ports with voice devices attached to voice VLANs, you can perform QoS-related configuration for voice data, ensuring the transmission priority of voice data stream and voice quality.

30.1 voice vlan

Description

The **voice vlan** command is used to enable Voice VLAN function. To disable Voice VLAN function, please use **no voice vlan** command.

Syntax

voice vlan *vlan-id*

no voice vlan

Parameter

vlan-id—— Specify IEEE 802.1Q VLAN ID, ranging from 2 to 4094.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the Voice VLAN function for VLAN 10:

```
Switch(config)# voice vlan 10
```

30.2 voice vlan (interface)

Description

The **voice vlan** command is used to enable Voice VLAN function on the desired ports. To disable Voice VLAN function on ports, please use **no voice vlan** command.

Syntax

voice vlan

no voice vlan

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the Voice VLAN function for port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#voice vlan
```

30.3 voice vlan priority

Description

The **voice vlan priority** command is used to configure the priority for the Voice VLAN. To restore to the default priority, please use **no voice vlan priority** command.

Syntax

voice vlan priority *pri*

no voice vlan priority

Parameter

pri—— Priority, ranging from 0 to 7, and the default value is 7.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the priority of the Voice VLAN as 5:

```
Switch(config)# voice vlan priority 5
```

30.4 voice vlan oui

Description

The **voice vlan oui** command is used to create Voice VLAN OUI. To delete the specified Voice VLAN OUI, please use **no voice vlan oui** command.

Syntax

```
voice vlan oui oui-prefix oui-desc string
```

```
no voice vlan mac-address oui-prefix
```

Parameter

oui-prefix — The OUI address of the voice device, in the format of XX:XX:XX.

string — Give a description to the OUI for identification which contains 16 characters at most.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create a Voice VLAN OUI described as TP-Phone with the OUI address 00:11:11:11:11:11 and the mask address FF:FF:FF:00:00:00:

```
Switch(config)#voice vlan oui 00:11:11 oui-desc TP-Phone
```

30.5 show voice vlan

Description

The **show voice vlan** command is used to display the global configuration information of Voice VLAN.

Syntax

show voice vlan

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the configuration information of Voice VLAN globally:

```
Switch(config)# show voice vlan
```

30.6 show voice vlan oui-table

Description

The **show voice vlan oui** command is used to display the configuration information of Voice VLAN OUI.

Syntax

show voice vlan oui

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the configuration information of Voice VLAN OUI:

```
Switch(config)# show voice vlan oui-table
```

30.7 show voice vlan interface

Description

The **show voice vlan interface** command is used to display the Voice VLAN configuration information of all ports.

Syntax

show voice vlan interface

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the Voice VLAN configuration information of all ports and port channels:

```
Switch(config)# show voice vlan interface
```

Chapter 31 Auto VoIP Commands

The Auto VoIP feature is used to prioritize the transmission of voice traffic. Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP) enables telephone calls over a data network, and the Auto VoIP feature helps provide a classification mechanism for voice packets. When Auto VoIP is configured on a port that receives both voice and data traffic, this feature can help ensure that the sound quality of an IP phone does not deteriorate when data traffic on the port is heavy.

31.1 auto-voip

Description

The **auto-voip** command is used to enable the Auto VoIP function globally.
To disable the Auto VoIP function, use **no auto-voip** command.

Syntax

auto-voip
no auto-voip

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Example

Enable the Auto VoIP function globally:

```
Switch(config)# auto-voip
```

31.2 auto-voip (interface)

Description

The **auto-voip** command is used to specify the interface mode as VLAN ID for the ports. In this mode, the voice devices will send voice packets with desired VLAN tag.

Syntax

auto-voip *vlan-id*

Parameter

vlan-id —Specify the Auto VoIP VLAN ID. The valid values are from 2 to 4094.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Example

Set Auto VoIP VLAN 3 for port 3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# auto-voip 3
```

31.3 auto-voip dot1p

Description

The **auto-voip dot1p** command is used to specify the interface mode as dot1p for the ports. In this mode, the voice devices will send voice packets with desired 802.1p priority.

Syntax

```
auto-voip dot1p dot1p
```

Parameter

dot1p—Set the 802.1p priority of Auto VoIP on specified ports. It ranges from 0 to 7.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Example

Set the 802.1p priority as 5 for the port:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# auto-voip dot1p 5
```

31.4 auto-voip untagged

Description

The **auto-voip untagged** command is used to specify the interface mode as untagged for the ports. In this mode, the voice devices will send untagged voice packets.

Syntax

```
auto-voip untagged
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Example

Set the interface mode as untagged for port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# auto-voip untagged
```

31.5 auto-voip none

Description

The **auto-voip none** command is used to specify the interface mode as none for the ports. In this mode, the switch allows the voice devices to use its own configuration to send voice traffic.

Syntax

```
auto-voip none
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Example

Instruct voice devices that are connected to port 3 to send the packets according to its own configuration:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# auto-voip none
```

31.6 no auto-voip (interface)

Description

The **no auto-voip** command is used to specify the interface mode as disabled for the ports, which means the Auto VoIP function is disabled on the corresponding port.

Syntax

no auto-voip

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Example

Disable the Auto VoIP function on port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# no auto-voip
```

31.7 auto-voip dscp

Description

The **auto-voip dscp** command is used to set the DSCP value of Auto VoIP on specified ports.

Syntax

auto-voip dscp *value*

Parameter

value—Set the DSCP value of Auto VoIP on specified ports. It ranges from 0 to 63. By default, it is 0.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Example

Set DSCP value of Auto VoIP on port 3 as 33:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# auto-voip dscp 33
```

31.8 auto-voip data priority

Description

The **auto-voip data priority** command is used to enable or disable the CoS Override Mode on specified ports.

Syntax

```
auto-voip data priority { trust | untrust }
```

Parameter

trust—In this mode, the switch will then put the voice packets in the corresponding TC queue according to the 802.1p priority of the packets.

untrust—In this mode, the switch will ignore the 802.1p priority in the voice packets and put the packets in TC-5 directly.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Example

Set the CoS Override Mode as trust for port 1/0/3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
Switch(config-if)# auto-voip data priority trust
```

31.9 show auto-voip

Description

The **show auto-voip** command is used to display the Auto VoIP configuration information.

Syntax

```
show auto-voip [ interface ]
```

Parameter

interface — Displays the Auto VoIP configuration information of ports.
When no parameter is entered, displays the global Auto VoIP configuration information.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and any Configuration Mode

Example

Displays the global Auto VoIP configuration information:

```
Switch (config)# show auto-voip
```


Chapter 32 Access Control Commands

32.1 user access-control ip-based enable

Description

The **user access-control ip-based enable** command is used to configure the access control mode IP-based. To disable the access control feature, please use **no user access-control** command.

Syntax

```
user access-control ip-based enable  
no user access-control
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the access control mode as IP-based:

```
Switch(config)# user access-control ip-based enable
```

32.2 user access-control ip-based

Description

The **user access-control ip-based** command is used to limit the IP-range of the users for login. Only the users within the IP-range you set here are allowed to login. You can add up to 30 IP-based entries. To cancel the user access limit, please use **no user access-control ip-based** command.

Syntax

```
user access-control ip-based { ip-addr ip-mask } [ snmp ] [ telnet ] [ ssh ]  
[ http ] [ https ] [ ping ] [ all ]  
no user access-control ip-based index id
```

Parameter

ip-addr — The source IP address. Only the users within the IP-range you set here are allowed for login. 5 IP-based entries can be configured at most.

ip-mask — The subnet mask of the IP address.

[snmp] [telnet] [ssh] [http] [https] [ping] [all] — Specify the access interface. These interfaces are enabled by default.

id — Delete the specified IP-based entry.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the access-control of the user whose IP address is 192.168.0.148:

```
Switch(config)# user access-control ip-based 192.168.0.148
255.255.255.255
```

32.3 user access-control mac-based enable

Description

The **user access-control mac-based enable** command is used to configure the access control mode MAC-based. To disable the access control feature, please use **no user access-control** command.

Syntax

user access-control mac-based enable

no user access-control

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the access control mode as MAC-based:

```
Switch(config)# user access-control mac-based enable
```

32.4 user access-control mac-based

Description

The **user access-control mac-based** command is used to limit the MAC address of the users for login. Only the user with this MAC address you set here is allowed to login. You can add up to 30 mac-based control entries. To delete the mac-based access control entry, please use **no user access-control mac-based** command.

Syntax

```
user access-control mac-based { mac-addr } [ snmp ] [ telnet ] [ ssh ] [ http ]  
[ https ] [ ping ] [ all ]
```

```
no user access-control mac-based index id
```

Parameter

mac-addr — The source MAC address. Only the user with this MAC address is allowed to login.

[snmp] [telnet] [ssh] [http] [https] [ping] [all] — Specify the access interface. These interfaces are enabled by default.

id — Specify the ID of the mac-based entry to be deleted.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure that only the user whose MAC address is 00:00:13:0A:00:01 is allowed to login:

```
Switch(config)# user access-control mac-based 00:00:13:0A:00:01
```

32.5 user access-control port-based enable

Description

The **user access-control port-based enable** command is used to configure the access control mode Port-based. To disable the access control feature, please use **no user access-control** command.

Syntax

```
user access-control port-based enable  
no user access-control
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the access control mode as Port-based:

```
Switch(config)# user access-control port-based enable
```

32.6 user access-control port-based

Description

The **user access-control port-based** command is used to limit the ports for login. Only the users connected to these ports you set here are allowed to login. You can add up to 30 port-based control entries. To delete the port-based access control entry, please use **no user access-control port-based** command.

Syntax

```
user access-control port-based interface { gigabitEthernet port-list } [ snmp ]  
[ telnet ] [ ssh ] [ http ] [ https ] [ ping ] [ all ]  
no user access-control port-based index id
```

Parameter

port-list——The list group of Ethernet ports, in the format of 1/0/1-4. You can appoint 5 ports at most.

[snmp] [telnet] [ssh] [http] [https] [ping] [all] — Specify the access interface. These interfaces are enabled by default.

id — Specify the ID of the port-based entry to be deleted.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure that only the users connected to ports 2-6 are allowed to login:

```
Switch(config)# user access-control port-based interface gigabitEthernet  
1/0/2-6
```

Chapter 33 HTTP and HTTPS Commands

With the help of HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) or HTTPS (Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer), you can manage the switch through a standard browser.

HTTP is the protocol to exchange or transfer hypertext.

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer), a security protocol, is to provide a secure connection for the application layer protocol (e.g. HTTP) based on TCP. Adopting asymmetrical encryption technology, SSL uses key pair to encrypt/decrypt information. A key pair refers to a public key (contained in the certificate) and its corresponding private key. By default the switch has a certificate (self-signed certificate) and a corresponding private key. The Certificate/Key Download function enables the user to replace the default key pair.

33.1 ip http server

Description

The **ip http server** command is used to enable the HTTP server within the switch. To disable the HTTP function, please use **no ip http server** command. This function is enabled by default. The HTTP and HTTPS server function can be disabled at the same time.

Syntax

```
ip http server  
no ip http server
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Disable the HTTP function:

```
Switch(config)# no ip http server
```

33.2 ip http port

Description

The **ip http port** command is used to configure the port number of the HTTP server within the switch. To set the number to the default value, please use **no ip http port** command.

Syntax

```
ip http port port-num  
no ip http port
```

Parameter

port-num—— Enter the port number. This value ranges from 1 to 65535.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the port number of HTTP server as 1800:

```
Switch(config)# ip http port 1800
```

33.3 ip http max-users

Description

The **ip http max-users** command is used to configure the maximum number of users that are allowed to connect to the HTTP server. To cancel this limitation, please use **no ip http max-users** command.

Syntax

```
ip http max-users admin-num operator-num poweruser-num user-num  
no ip http max-users
```

Parameter

admin-num —— The maximum number of the users logging on to the HTTP server as Admin, ranging from 1 to 16. The total number of users should be no more than 16.

operator-num — The maximum number of the users logging on to the HTTP server as operator, ranging from 0 to 15. The total number of users should be no more than 16.

poweruser-num — The maximum number of the users logging on to the HTTP server as Power User, ranging from 0 to 15. The total number of users should be no more than 16.

user-num — The maximum number of the users logging on to the HTTP server as User, ranging from 0 to 15. The total number of users should be no more than 16.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the maximum number of the Admin, Operator, Power User and User as 5, 1, 1, 1 for HTTP:

```
Switch(config)# ip http max-users 5 1 1 1
```

33.4 ip http session timeout

Description

The **ip http session timeout** command is used to configure the connection timeout of the HTTP server. To restore to the default timeout time, please use **no ip http session timeout** command.

Syntax

ip http session timeout *time*

no ip http session timeout

Parameter

time —The timeout time, ranging from 5 to 30 in minutes. By default, the value is 10.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the timeout time of the HTTP connection as 15 minutes:

```
Switch(config)# ip http session timeout 15
```

33.5 ip http secure-server

Description

The **ip http secure-server** command is used to enable the HTTPS server within the switch. To disable the HTTPS function, please use **no ip http secure-server** command. This function is enabled by default. The HTTP and HTTPS server function can be disabled at the same time.

Syntax

```
ip http secure-server  
no ip http secure-server
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Disable the HTTP function:

```
Switch(config)# no ip http secure-server
```

33.6 ip http secure-port

Description

The **ip http secure-port** command is used to configure the port number of the HTTPS server within the switch. To set the number to the default value, please use **no ip http secure-port** command.

Syntax

```
ip http secure-port port-num
```

no ip http secure-port

Parameter

port-num — Enter the port number. This value ranges from 1 to 65535.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the port number of HTTPS server as 2800:

```
Switch(config)# ip http secure-port 2800
```

33.7 ip http secure-protocol

Description

The **ip http secure-protocol** command is used to configure the SSL protocol version. To restore to the default SSL version, please use **no ip http secure-protocol** command. By default, the switch supports all the protocol versions, including SSL 3.0, TLS 1.0, TLS 1.1 and TLS 1.2.

Syntax

```
ip http secure-protocol { ssl3 | tls1 | tls11 | tls12 | all }
```

```
no ip http secure-protocol
```

Parameter

ssl3 — Select SSL Version 3.0 as the protocol for HTTPS.

tls1 — Select TLS Version 1.0 as the protocol for HTTPS.

tls11 — Select TLS Version 1.1 as the protocol for HTTPS.

tls12 — Select TLS Version 1.2 as the protocol for HTTPS.

all — Enable all the above protocols for HTTPS. The HTTPS server and client will negotiate the protocol each time.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the protocol of SSL connection as SSL 3.0:

```
Switch(config)# ip http secure-protocol ssl3
```

33.8 ip http secure-ciphersuite

Description

The **ip http secure-ciphersuite** command is used to configure the cipherSuites over the SSL connection supported by the switch. To restore to the default ciphersuite types, please use **no ip http secure-ciphersuite** command.

Syntax

```
ip http secure-ciphersuite { [ rc4-128-md5 ] [ rc4-128-sha ] [ des-cbc-sha ]  
[ 3des-ede-cbc-sha ] [ ecdhe-a128-g-s256 ] [ ecdhe-a256-g-s384 ] }
```

```
no ip http secure-ciphersuite
```

Parameter

[rc4-128-md5] [rc4-128-sha] [des-cbc-sha] [3des-ede-cbc-sha] [ecdhe-a128-g-s256] [ecdhe-a256-g-s384] — Specify the encryption algorithm and the digest algorithm to use on an SSL connection. By default, the switch supports all these ciphersuites.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the ciphersuite to be used for encryption over the SSL connection as 3des-ede-cbc-sha:

```
Switch(config)# ip http secure-ciphersuite 3des-ede-cbc-sha
```

33.9 ip http secure-max-users

Description

The **ip http secure-max-users** command is used to configure the maximum number of users that are allowed to connect to the HTTPs server. To cancel this limitation, please use **no ip http secure-max-users** command.

Syntax

```
ip http secure-max-users admin-num operator-num poweruser-num  
user-num
```

```
no ip secure-max-users
```

Parameter

admin-num — The maximum number of the users logging on to the HTTPs server as Admin, ranging from 1 to 16. The total number of users should be less than 16.

Operator-num — The maximum number of the users logging on to the HTTPs server as operator, ranging from 0 to 15. The total number of users should be less than 16.

poweruser-num — The maximum number of the users logging on to the HTTP server as Power User, ranging from 0 to 15. The total number of users should be less than 16.

user-num — The maximum number of the users logging on to the HTTP server as User, ranging from 0 to 15. The total number of users should be less than 16.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the maximum number of the Admin, Operator, Power User and User as 5, 1, 1, 1 for HTTPs:

```
Switch(config)# ip http secure-max-users 5 1 1 1
```

33.10 ip http secure-session timeout

Description

The **ip http secure-session timeout** command is used to configure the connection timeout of the HTTPS server. To restore to the default timeout time, please use **no ip http secure-session timeout** command.

Syntax

```
ip http secure-session timeout time  
no ip http secure-session timeout
```

Parameter

time — The timeout time, ranging from 5 to 30 in minutes. By default, the value is 10.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the timeout time of the HTTPs connection as 15 minutes:

```
Switch(config)# ip http secure-session timeout 15
```

33.11 ip http secure-server download certificate

Description

The **ip http secure-server download certificate** command is used to download a certificate to the switch from TFTP server.

Syntax

```
ip http secure-server download certificate ssl-cert ip-address ip-addr
```

Parameter

ssl-cert — The name of the SSL certificate which is selected to download to the switch. The length of the name ranges from 1 to 25 characters. The Certificate must be BASE64 encoded.

ip-addr — The IP address of the TFTP server. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example 192.168.0.1 or fe80::1234.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Download an SSL Certificate named ssl-cert from TFTP server with the IP address of 192.168.0.146:

```
Switch(config)# ip http secure-server download certificate ssl-cert
ip-address 192.168.0.146
```

Download an SSL Certificate named ssl-cert from TFTP server with the IP address of fe80::1234

```
Switch(config)# ip http secure-server download certificate ssl-cert
ip-address fe80::1234
```

33.12 ip http secure-server download key

Description

The **ip http secure-server download key** command is used to download an SSL key to the switch from TFTP server.

Syntax

```
ip http secure-server download key ssl-keyip-address ip-addr
```

Parameter

ssl-key — The name of the SSL key which is selected to download to the switch. The length of the name ranges from 1 to 25 characters. The Key must be BASE64 encoded.

ip-addr — The IP address of the TFTP server. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example 192.168.0.1 or fe80::1234.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Download an SSL key named ssl-key from TFTP server with the IP address of 192.168.0.146:

```
Switch(config)# ip http secure-server download key ssl-key ip-address  
192.168.0.146
```

Download an SSL key named ssl-key from TFTP server with the IP address of fe80::1234

```
Switch(config)# ip http secure-server download key ssl-key ip-address  
fe80::1234
```

33.13 show ip http configuration

Description

The **show ip http configuration** command is used to display the configuration information of the HTTP server, including status, session timeout, access-control, max-user number and the idle-timeout, etc.

Syntax

```
show ip http configuration
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration information of the HTTP server:

```
Switch(config)# show ip http configuration
```

33.14 show ip http secure-server

Description

The **show ip http secure-server** command is used to display the global configuration of SSL.

Syntax

```
show ip http secure-server
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the global configuration of SSL:

```
Switch(config)# show ip http secure-server
```


Chapter 34 SSH Commands

SSH (Security Shell) can provide the unsecured remote management with security and powerful authentication to ensure the security of the management information.

34.1 ip ssh server

Description

The **ip ssh server** command is used to enable SSH function. To disable the SSH function, please use **no ip ssh server** command.

Syntax

ip ssh server
no ip ssh server

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the SSH function:

```
Switch(config)# ip ssh server
```

34.2 ip ssh port

Description

The **ip ssh port** command is used to configure the port for SSH service. To set the value to the default, please use **no ip ssh port** command.

Syntax

ip ssh port *port*
no ip ssh port

Parameter

port — Set the port number. It ranges from 1 to 65535. The default value is 22.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the SSH port number as 22:

```
Switch(config)# ip ssh port 22
```

34.3 ip ssh version

Description

The **ip ssh version** command is used to enable the SSH protocol version. To disable the protocol version, please use **no ip ssh version** command.

Syntax

```
ip ssh version {v1 | v2 }
```

```
no ip ssh version {v1 | v2 }
```

Parameter

v1 | v2 — The SSH protocol version to be enabled. They represent SSH v1 and SSH v2 respectively.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable SSH v2:

```
Switch(config)# ip ssh version v2
```

34.4 ip ssh algorithm

Description

The **ip ssh algorithm** command is used to configure the algorithm in SSH function. To disable the specified algorithm, please use **no ip ssh algorithm** command.

Syntax

ip ssh algorithm { AES128-CBC | AES192-CBC | AES256-CBC | Blowfish-CBC | Cast128-CBC | 3DES-CBC | HMAC-SHA1 | HMAC-MD5 }

no ip ssh algorithm

Parameter

AES128-CBC | AES192-CBC | AES256-CBC | Blowfish-CBC | Cast128-CBC | 3DES-CBC | HMAC-SHA1 | HMAC-MD5 ———
Specify the SSH algorithm.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the SSH algorithm as AES128-CBC:

```
Switch(config)# ip ssh algorithm AES128-CBC
```

34.5 ip ssh timeout

Description

The **ip ssh timeout** command is used to specify the idle-timeout time of SSH. To restore to the factory defaults, please use **ip ssh timeout** command.

Syntax

ip ssh timeout *value*

no ip ssh timeout

Parameter

value ——— The Idle-timeout time. During this period, the system will automatically release the connection if there is no

operation from the client. It ranges from 1 to 120 in seconds.
By default, this value is 120 seconds.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the idle-timeout time of SSH as 30 seconds:

```
Switch(config)# ip ssh timeout 30
```

34.6 ip ssh max-client

Description

The **ip ssh max-client** command is used to specify the maximum number of the connections to the SSH server. To return to the default configuration, please use **no ip ssh max-client** command.

Syntax

```
ip ssh max-client num  
no ip ssh max-client
```

Parameter

num — The maximum number of the connections to the SSH server. It ranges from 1 to 5. By default, this value is 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the maximum number of the connections to the SSH server as 3:

```
Switch(config)# ip ssh max-client 3
```

34.7 ip ssh download

Description

The **ip ssh download** command is used to download the SSH key file from TFTP server.

Syntax

```
ip ssh download { v1 | v2 } key-file ip-address ip-addr
```

Parameter

v1 | v2 — Select the type of SSH key to download, v1 represents SSH-1, v2 represents SSH-2.

key-file — The name of the key-file which is selected to download. The length of the name ranges from 1 to 25 characters. The key length of the downloaded file must be in the range of 512 to 3072 bits.

ip-addr — The IP address of the TFTP server. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example 192.168.0.1 or fe80::1234.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Download an SSH-1 type key file named ssh-key from TFTP server with the IP address 192.168.0.148:

```
Switch(config)# ip ssh download v1 ssh-key ip-address 192.168.0.148
```

Download an SSH-1 type key file named ssh-key from TFTP server with the IP address fe80::1234:

```
Switch(config)# ip ssh download v1 ssh-key ip-address fe80::1234
```

34.8 remove public-key

Description

The **remove public-key** command is used to remove the SSH public key from the switch.

Syntax

```
remove public-key { v1 | v2 }
```

Parameter

v1 | v2 — Select the type of SSH public key, v1 represents SSH-1, v2 represents SSH-2.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Remove the SSH-1 type public key from the switch:

```
Switch# remove public-key v1
```

34.9 show ip ssh

Description

The **show ip ssh** command is used to display the global configuration of SSH.

Syntax

```
show ip ssh
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the global configuration of SSH:

```
Switch(config)# show ip ssh
```

Chapter 35 Telnet Commands

35.1 telnet

Description

The **telnet** command is used to log in and manage other devices via telnet.

Syntax

```
telnet ip-addr
```

Parameter

ip-addr—The IP address of the device you want to log in.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

User Guidelines

Make sure the switch can access the device, and the device can be logged in via telnet.

Example

Log in to a device with the IP address of 192.168.0.10:

```
Switch# telnet 192.168.0.10
```

35.2 telnet enable

Description

The **telnet enable** command is used to enable the Telnet function. To disable the Telnet function, please use the **telnet disable** command. This function is enabled by default.

Syntax

```
telnet enable
```

```
telnet disable
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Disable the Telnet function:

```
Switch(config)# telnet disable
```

35.3 telnet port

Description

The **telnet port** command is used to configure the telnet port number. To restore the setting, please use the **no telnet port** command.

Syntax

```
telnet port port
```

```
no telnet port
```

Parameter

port—The number of telnet port.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the telnet port number as 566:

```
Switch(config)# telnet port 566
```

35.4 show telnet-status

Description

The **show telnet-status** command is used to display the configuration information of the Telnet function.

Syntax

show telnet-status

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display whether the Telnet function is enabled:

```
Switch(config)# show telnet-status
```

Chapter 36 AAA Commands

AAA stands for authentication, authorization and accounting. This feature is used to authenticate users trying to log in to the switch or trying to access the administrative level privilege.

- **Applicable Access Application**

The authentication can be applied on the following access applications: Telnet, SSH and HTTP.

- **Authentication Method List**

A method list describes the authentication methods and their sequence to authenticate a user. The switch supports Login List for users to gain access to the switch, and Enable List for normal users to gain administrative privileges.

- **RADIUS/TACACS+ Server**

User can configure the RADIUS/TACACS+ servers for the connection between the switch and the server.

- **Server Group**

User can define the authentication server group with up to several servers running the same secure protocols, either RADIUS or TACACS+. Users can set these servers in a preferable order, which is called the server group list. When a user tries to access the switch, the switch will ask the first server in the server group list for authentication. If no response is received, the second server will be queried, and so on.

36.1 tacacs-server host

Description

The **tacacs-server host** command is used to configure a new TACACS+ server. To delete the specified TACACS+ server, please use **no tacacs-server host** command.

Syntax

```
tacacs-server host ip-address [ port port-id ] [ timeout time ] [ key { [ 0 ]  
string | 7 encryped-string } ]  
no tacacs-server host ip-address
```

Parameter

ip-address—— Specify the IP address of the TACACS+ server.

port-id—— Specify the server's port number for AAA. By default it is 49.

time — Specify the time in seconds the switch waits for the server's response before it times out. The time ranges from 1 to 9 seconds. The default is 5 seconds.

[0] *string* | 7 *encrypted-string* — 0 and 7 are the encryption type. 0 indicates that an unencrypted key will follow. 7 indicates that a symmetric encrypted key with a fixed length will follow. By default, the encryption type is 0. "*string*" is the shared key for the switch and the authentication servers to exchange messages. "*encrypted-string*" is a symmetric encrypted key with a fixed length, which you can copy from another switch's configuration file. The key or encrypted-key you configured here will be displayed in the encrypted form. Always configure the key as the last item of this command.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

The TACACS+ servers you configured are added in the server group "tacacs" by default.

Example

Configure a TACACS+ server with the IP address as 1.1.1.1, TCP port as 1500, timeout as 6 seconds, and the unencrypted key string as 12345.

```
Switch(config)# tacacs-server host 1.1.1.1 port 1500 timeout 6 key 12345
```

36.2 show tacacs-server

Description

This **show tacacs-server** command is used to display the summary information of the TACACS+ servers.

Syntax

```
show tacacs-server
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the information of all the TACACS+ servers:

```
Switch(config)# show tacacs-server
```

36.3 radius-server host

Description

The **radius-server host** command is used to configure a new RADIUS server. To delete the specified RADIUS server, please use **no radius-server host** command.

Syntax

```
radius-server host ip-address [ auth-port port-id ] [ acct-port port-id ]  
[ timeout time ] [ retransmit number ] [ nas-id nas-id ] [ key { [ 0 ] string | 7  
encrypted-string } ]  
no radius-server host ip-address
```

Parameter

ip-address — Specify the IP address of the RADIUS server.

auth-port *port-id* — Specify the UDP destination port for authentication requests. By default it is 1812.

acct-port *port-id* — Specify the UDP destination port for accounting requests. By default it is 1813.

time — Specify the time in seconds the switch waits for the server's response before it times out. The time ranges from 1 to 9 seconds. The default is 5 seconds.

number — Specify the number of times a RADIUS request is resent to a server if the server is not responding in time. By default it is 2 times.

nas-id — Specify the name of the NAS (Network Access Server) to be contained in RADIUS packets for identification. It ranges from 1 to 31 characters. The default value is the MAC address of the switch. Generally, the NAS indicates the switch itself.

[0] *string* | 7 *encrypted-string* — 0 and 7 are the encryption type. 0 indicates that an unencrypted key will follow. 7 indicates that a symmetric

encrypted key with a fixed length will follow. By default, the encryption type is 0. "*string*" is the shared key for the switch and the authentication servers to exchange messages. "*encrypted-string*" is a symmetric encrypted key with a fixed length, which you can copy from another switch's configuration file. The key or encrypted-key you configured here will be displayed in the encrypted form. Always configure the key as the last item of this command.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

The RADIUS servers you configured are added in the server group "radius" by default.

Example

Configure a RADIUS server with the IP address as 1.1.1.1, authentication port as 1200, timeout as 6 seconds, retransmit times as 3, and the unencrypted key string as 12345.

```
Switch(config)# radius-server host 1.1.1.1 auth-port 1200 timeout 6
retransmit 3 key 12345
```

36.4 show radius-server

Description

This **show radius-server** command is used to display the summary information of the RADIUS servers.

Syntax

```
show radius-server
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the information of all the RADIUS servers:

```
Switch(config)# show radius-server
```

36.5 aaa group

Description

This **aaa group** command is used to create AAA server groups to group existing TACACS+/RADIUS servers for authentication. This command puts the switch in the server group subconfiguration mode.

To delete the corresponding AAA group, please use the **no aaa group** command.

Syntax

```
aaa group { radius | tacacs } group-name  
no aaa group { radius | tacacs } group-name
```

Parameter

radius | tacacs — Specify the server group type as RADIUS or TACACS+.
group-name — Specify the server group name.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create a RADIUS server group with the name radius1:

```
Switch(config)# aaa group radius radius1
```

36.6 server

Description

This **server** command is used to add the existing server in the defined server group. To remove the specified server from the server group, please use the **no server** command.

Syntax

```
server ip-address  
no server ip-address
```

Parameter

ip-address—— Specify the server's IP address.

Command Mode

Server Group Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create the RADIUS server 1.1.1.1 to RADIUS server group "radius1":

```
Switch(config)# aaa group radius radius1  
Switch(aaa-group)# server 1.1.1.1
```

36.7 show aaa group

Description

This **show aaa group** command is used to display the summary information of the AAA groups. All the servers in this group will be listed if you specify the group name.

Syntax

```
show aaa group [ group-name ]
```

Parameter

group-name—— Specify the server group name.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the information of all the server groups:

```
Switch(config)# show aaa group
```

36.8 aaa authentication login

Description

This **aaa authentication login** command is used to configure a login authentication method list. A method list describes the authentication methods and their sequence to authenticate a user. To delete the specified authentication method list, please use the **no aaa authentication login** command.

Syntax

```
aaa authentication login { method-list } { method1 } [ method2 ] [ method3 ]  
[ method4 ]  
no authentication login method-list
```

Parameter

method-list — Specify the method list name.

method1, method2, method3, method4 — Specify the authentication methods in order. The next authentication method is tried only if the previous method does not respond, not if it fails.

The preset methods include radius, tacacs, local and none. "radius" means the RADIUS server group "radius"; "tacacs" means the RACACS+ server group "tacacs"; "local" means local username database are used; "none" means no authentication is used for login.

Users can also define new method with the [aaa group](#) command.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

By default the login authentication method list is "default" with "local" as method1.

Example

Configure a login authentication method list "list1" with the priority1 method as radius and priority2 method as local:

```
Switch(config)# aaa authentication login list1 radius local
```


36.9 aaa authentication enable

Description

This **aaa authentication enable** command is used to configure a privilege authentication method list. A method list describes the authentication methods and their sequence to elevate a user's privilege. To delete the specified authentication method list, please use the **no aaa authentication enable** command.

Syntax

```
aaa authentication enable { method-list } { method1 } [ method2 ] [ method3 ]  
[ method4 ]
```

```
no authentication enable method-list
```

Parameter

method-list — Specify the method list name.

method1, method2, method3, method4 — Specify the authentication methods in order. The next authentication method is tried only if the previous method does not respond, not if it fails.

The preset methods include radius, tacacs, local and none. "radius" means the RADIUS server group "radius"; "tacacs" means the RACACS+ server group "tacacs"; "local" means local username database are used; "none" means no authentication is used for privilege elevation.

Users can also define new method with the [aaa group](#) command.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

By default the enable authentication method is "default" with "none" as method1.

Example

Configure a privilege authentication method list "list2" with the priority1 method as radius and priority2 method as local:

```
Switch(config)# aaa authentication enable list2 radius local
```

36.10 aaa authentication dot1x default

Description

This **aaa authentication dot1x default** command is used to configure an 802.1x authentication method list. A method list describes the authentication methods for users' login in 802.1x. To delete the default authentication method list, please use the **no aaa authentication dot1x default** command.

Syntax

```
aaa authentication dot1x default { method }
```

```
no aaa authentication dot1x default
```

Parameter

method — Specify the method name. Only RADIUS server group is supported, and the default method is server group "radius".

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the default 802.1x authentication method as "radius1":

```
Switch(config)# aaa authentication dot1x default radius1
```

36.11 aaa accounting dot1x default

Description

This **aaa accounting dot1x default** command is used to configure an 802.1x accounting method list. To delete the default accounting method list, please use the **no aaa accounting dot1x default** command.

Syntax

```
aaa accounting dot1x default { method }
```

```
no aaa accounting dot1x default
```

Parameter

method — Specify the method name. Only RADIUS server group is supported, and the default method is server group "radius".

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the default 802.1x accounting method as "radius1":

```
Switch(config)# aaa accounting dot1x default radius1
```

36.12 show aaa authentication

Description

This **show aaa authentication** command is used to display the summary information of the authentication login, enable and dot1x method list.

Syntax

```
show aaa authentication [ login | enable | dot1x ]
```

Parameter

login | enable | dot1x — Specify the method list type.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the information of all the authentication method lists:

```
Switch(config)# show aaa authentication
```

36.13 show aaa accounting

Description

This **show aaa accounting** command is used to display the summary information of the accounting method list.

Syntax

```
show aaa accounting [ dot1x ]
```

Parameter

dot1x — Specify the method list type.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the information of the default 802.1x accounting method list:

```
Switch(config)# show aaa accounting
```

36.14 line telnet

Description

The **line telnet** command is used to enter the Line Configuration Mode to configure the telnet terminal line to which you want to apply the authentication list.

Syntax

```
line telnet
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enter the telnet terminal line configuration mode:

```
Switch(config)#line telnet
```

36.15 login authentication (telnet)

Description

The **login authentication** command is used to apply the login authentication method list to the telnet terminal line. To restore to the default authentication method list, please use the **no login authentication** command.

Syntax

```
login authentication { method-list }
```

```
no login authentication
```

Parameter

method-list — Specify the login method list on the telnet terminal line. It is "default" by default, which contains the method "local".

Command Mode

Line Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the login authentication method list on the telnet terminal line as "list1":

```
Switch(config)#line telnet
```

```
Switch(config-line)# login authentication list1
```

36.16 line ssh

Description

The **line ssh** command is used to enter the Line Configuration Mode to configure the ssh terminal line to which you want to apply the authentication list.

Syntax

line ssh

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enter the ssh terminal line configuration mode:

```
Switch(config)#line ssh
```

36.17 login authentication (ssh)

Description

The **login authentication** command is used to apply the login authentication method list to the ssh terminal line. To restore to the default authentication method list, please use the **no login authentication** command.

Syntax

login authentication { *method-list* }

no login authentication

Parameter

method-list — Specify the login method list on the ssh terminal line. It is "default" by default, which contains the method "local".

Command Mode

Line Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the login authentication method list on the ssh terminal line as "list1":

```
Switch(config)# line ssh
```

```
Switch(config-line)# login authentication list1
```

36.18 enable authentication (telnet)

Description

The **enable authentication** command is used to apply the privilege authentication method list to the telnet terminal line. To restore to the default authentication method list, please use the **no enable authentication** command.

Syntax

```
enable authentication { method-list }  
no enable authentication
```

Parameter

method-list—— Specify the enable method list on the telnet terminal line. It is "default" by default, which contains the method "none".

Command Mode

Line Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the enable authentication method list on the telnet terminal line as "list2":

```
Switch(config)#line telnet  
Switch(config-line)# enable authentication list2
```

36.19 enable authentication (ssh)

Description

The **enable authentication** command is used to apply the privilege authentication method list to the ssh terminal line. To restore to the default authentication method list, please use the **no enable authentication** command.

Syntax

enable authentication { *method-list* }

no enable authentication

Parameter

method-list — Specify the enable method list on the ssh terminal line. It is "default" by default, which contains the method "none".

Command Mode

Line Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the enable authentication method list on the ssh terminal line as "list2":

```
Switch(config)# line ssh
Switch(config-line)# enable authentication list2
```

36.20 ip http login authentication

Description

The **ip http login authentication** command is used to apply the login authentication method list to users accessing through HTTP. To restore to the default authentication method list, please use the **no ip http login authentication** command.

Syntax

ip http login authentication { *method-list* }

no ip http login authentication

Parameter

method-list — Specify the login method list on the HTTP access. It is "default" by default, which contains the method "local".

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the login authentication method list on the HTTP access as "list1":

```
Switch(config)# ip http login authentication list1
```

36.21 ip http enable authentication

Description

The **ip http enable authentication** command is used to apply the privilege authentication method list to users accessing through HTTP. To restore to the default authentication method list, please use the **no ip http enable authentication** command.

Syntax

```
ip http enable authentication { method-list }
```

```
no ip http enable authentication
```

Parameter

method-list — Specify the enable method list on the HTTP access. It is "default" by default, which contains the method "none".

Command Mode

Line Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the enable authentication method list on the HTTP access as "list2":

```
Switch(config)# ip http enable authentication list2
```

36.22 show aaa global

Description

This **show aaa global** command is used to display global status of AAA function and the login/enable method lists of different application modules: telnet, ssh and HTTP.

Syntax

```
show aaa global
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the AAA function's global status and each application's method list:

```
Switch(config)# show aaa global
```

36.23 enable admin password

Description

The **enable admin password** command is used to set or change the Enable password for users to change the access level to admin. To remove the Enable password, please use **no enable admin** command. This command uses the symmetric encryption.

Syntax

```
enable admin password {[ 0] password | 7 encrypted-password}  
no enable admin
```

Parameter

0 — Specify the encryption type. 0 indicates that an unencrypted password will follow. By default, the encryption type is 0.

password — Enable password, a string with 31 characters at most, which can contain only English letters (case-sensitive), digits and 17 kinds of special characters. The special characters are **!\$%()'*,.-/[]_{}.** By default, it is empty. By default, it is empty.

7 — Indicates a symmetric encrypted password with fixed length will follow. *encrypted-password*— A symmetric encrypted password with fixed length, which you can copy from another switch's configuration file. After the encrypted password is configured, you should use the corresponding unencrypted password if you re-enter this mode.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

If the password you configured here is unencrypted and the global encryption function is enabled in [service password-encryption](#), the password in the configuration file will be displayed in the symmetric encrypted form.

If both the **enable admin password** and **enable admin secret** are defined, only the latest configured password will take effect.

Example

Set the Enable password as "abc123" and unencrypted for users to change the access level to admin:

```
Switch(config)#enable admin password 0 abc123
```

36.24 enable admin secret

Description

The **enable admin secret** command is used to set or change the Enable password for users to change the access level to admin. To remove the Enable password, please use **no enable admin** command. This command uses the MD5 encryption.

Syntax

```
enable admin secret {[ 0] password | 5 encrypted-password}  
no enable admin
```

Parameter

0 — Specify the encryption type. 0 indicates that an unencrypted password will follow. By default, the encryption type is 0.

password — Enable password, a string with 31 characters at most, which can contain only English letters (case-sensitive), digits and 17 kinds of special characters. The special characters are **!\$%()*,-./[]_{}|**. By default, it is empty. By default, it is empty. The password in the configuration file will be displayed in the MD5 encrypted form.

5 — Indicates an MD5 encrypted password with fixed length will follow.

encrypted-password — An MD5 encrypted password with fixed length, which you can copy from another switch's configuration file. After the encrypted password is configured, you should use the corresponding unencrypted password if you re-enter this mode.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

If both the **enable admin password** and **enable admin secret** are defined, only the latest configured password will take effect.

Example

Set the Enable password as "abc123" and unencrypted for users to change the access level to admin. The password will be displayed in the encrypted form.

```
Switch(config)#enable admin secret 0 abc123
```

36.25 enable-admin

Description

The **enable-admin** command is used to get the administrative privileges by a non-admin user.

Syntax

```
enable-admin
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only User, Power User and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Get the administrative privileges (the Enable password is "123456"):

```
Switch# enable-admin
```

```
Password: 123456
```

Chapter 37 IEEE 802.1x Commands

IEEE 802.1x function is to provide an access control for LAN ports via the authentication. An 802.1x system include three entities: supplicant, authenticator and authentication server.

- Supplicant: the device that requests access to the LAN.
- Authentication server: performs the actual authentication of the supplicant. It validates the identity of the supplicant and notifies the authenticator whether or not the supplicant is authorized to access the LAN.
- Authenticator: controls the physical access to the network based on the authentication status of the supplicant. It is usually an 802.1x-supported network device, such as this TP-Link switch. It acts as an intermediary (proxy) between the supplicant and the authentication server, requesting identity information from the supplicant, verifying that information with the authentication server, and relaying a response to the supplicant.

This chapter handles with the authentication process between the supplicant and the switch. To realize the authentication and accounting function, you should also enable the AAA function and configure the RADIUS server. Go to [Chapter 42 AAA Commands](#) for more details.

37.1 dot1x system-auth-control

Description

The **dot1x system-auth-control** command is used to enable the IEEE 802.1x function globally. To disable the IEEE 802.1x function, please use **no dot1x system-auth-control** command.

Syntax

```
dot1x system-auth-control  
no dot1x system-auth-control
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the IEEE 802.1x function:

```
Switch(config)#dot1x system-auth-control
```

37.2 dot1x handshake

Description

The **dot1x handshake** command is used enable the handshake feature. The handshake feature is used to detect the connection status between the TP-Link 802.1x supplicant and the switch. Please disable the handshake feature if you are using a non-TP-Link 802.1x-compliant client software. This feature is enabled by default.

Syntax

dot1x handshake

no dot1x handshake

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Disable the 802.1x handshake function:

```
Switch(config)# no dot1x handshake
```

37.3 dot1x auth-protocol

Description

The **dot1x auth-protocol** command is used to configure the authentication protocol of IEEE 802.1x and the default 802.1x authentication method is "eap". To restore to the default 802.1x authentication protocol, please use **no dot1x auth-protocol** command.

Syntax

dot1x auth-protocol { pap | eap }

no dot1x auth-protocol

Parameter

pap | eap — Authentication protocols.

pap: EAP termination mode. IEEE 802.1x authentication system uses extensible authentication protocol (EAP) to exchange information between the switch and the client. The EAP packets are terminated at the switch and repackaged in the Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) packets, and then transferred to the RADIUS server.

eap: EAP relay mode. IEEE 802.1x authentication system uses extensible authentication protocol (EAP) to exchange information between the switch and the client. The EAP protocol packets with authentication data are encapsulated in the advanced protocol (such as RADIUS) packets and transmitted to the authentication server.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the Authentication protocol of IEEE 802.1x as "pap":

```
Switch(config)#dot1x auth-protocol pap
```

37.4 dot1x vlan-assignment

Description

The **dot1x vlan-assignment** command is used to enable the VLAN assignment feature. To disable this feature, please use **no dot1x vlan-assignment** command.

802.1x VLAN assignment is a technology allowing the RADIUS server to send the VLAN assignment to the port when the port is authenticated.

If the assigned VLAN does not exist on the switch, the switch will create the related VLAN automatically, add the authenticated port to the VLAN and change the PVID based on the assigned VLAN.

If the assigned VLAN exists on the switch, the switch will directly add the authenticated port to the related VLAN and change the PVID instead of creating a new VLAN.

If no VLAN is supplied by the RADIUS server or if 802.1x authentication is disabled, the port will be in its original VLAN after successful authentication.

Syntax

dot1x vlan-assignment
no dot1x vlan-assignment

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the VLAN assignment feature:

```
Switch(config)#dot1x vlan-assignment
```

37.5 dot1x accounting

Description

The **dot1x accounting** command is used to enable the IEEE 802.1x accounting function globally. To disable the IEEE 802.1x accounting function, please use **no dot1x accounting** command.

Syntax

dot1x accounting
no dot1x accounting

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the enable the IEEE 802.1x accounting function globally:

```
Switch(config)#dot1x accounting
```

37.6 dot1x mab

Description

The **dot1x mab** command is used to enable the MAB feature on the port. To disable this feature, please use **no dot1x mab** command.

With MAB (MAC-Based Authentication Bypass) feature enabled, the switch automatically sends the authentication server a RADIUS access request frame with the client's MAC address as the username and password. It is also necessary to configure the RADIUS server with the client's information for authentication. You can enable this feature on IEEE 802.1x ports connected to devices without 802.1x capability. For example, most printers, IP phones and fax machines do not have 802.1x capability.

Syntax

```
dot1x mab  
no dot1x mab
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the MAB feature on the Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

```
Switch(config-if)#dot1x mab
```

37.7 dot1x guest-vlan

Description

The **dot1x guest-vlan** command is used to configure the Guest VLAN function on the port. To disable the Guest VLAN function, please use **no dot1x guest-vlan** command.

Syntax

```
dot1x guest-vlan vid
```

```
no dot1x guest-vlan
```

Parameter

vid — The VLAN ID needed to enable the Guest VLAN function, ranging from 0 to 4094. 0 means that Guest VLAN is disabled. The supplicants in the Guest VLAN can access the specified network source.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the Guest VLAN function for VLAN 5 and set the VLAN ID as 20 on the Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1::

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

```
Switch(config-if)#dot1x guest-vlan 5
```

37.8 dot1x timeout quiet-period

Description

The **dot1x timeout quiet-period** command is used to enable the quiet-period function on the port. To disable the function, please use **no dot1x timeout quiet-period** command.

Syntax

```
dot1x timeout quiet-period [ time ]
```

```
no dot1x timeout quiet-period
```

Parameter

time — The length of the quiet-period time. If one user's authentication fails, its subsequent IEEE 802.1x authentication requests will not be processed during the quiet-period time. It ranges from 1 to 999 seconds and the default value is 10 seconds.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the quiet-period function and set the quiet-period as 5 seconds on the Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#dot1x quiet-period 5
```

37.9 dot1x timeout supp-timeout

Description

The **dot1x timeout supp-timeout** command is used to configure the supplicant timeout on the port. To restore to the default, please use **no dot1x timeout supp-timeout** command.

Syntax

```
dot1x timeout supp-timeout time
no dot1x timeout supp-timeout
```

Parameter

time —The maximum time for the switch to wait for the response from supplicant before resending a request to the supplicant, ranging from 1 to 60 in second. By default, it is 30 seconds.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the supplicant timeout value as 5 seconds on the Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#dot1x timeout supp-timeout 5
```

37.10 dot1x max-req

Description

The **dot1x max-req** command is used to configure the maximum transfer times of the repeated authentication request when the server cannot be connected. To restore to the default value, please use **no dot1x max-req** command.

Syntax

```
dot1x max-req times
no dot1x max-req
```

Parameter

times — The maximum transfer times of the repeated authentication request, ranging from 1 to 9 in times. By default, the value is 3.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the maximum transfer times of the repeated authentication request as 5 on the Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#dot1x max-req 5
```

37.11 dot1x

Description

The **dot1x** command is used to enable the IEEE 802.1x function for a specified port. To disable the IEEE 802.1x function for a specified port, please use **no dot1x** command.

Syntax

```
dot1x
no dot1x
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the IEEE 802.1x function for the Gigabit Ethernet port 1:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#dot1x
```

37.12 dot1x port-control

Description

The **dot1x port-control** command is used to configure the Control Mode of IEEE 802.1x for the specified port. By default, the control mode is "auto". To restore to the default configuration, please use **no dot1x port-control** command.

Syntax

```
dot1x port-control {auto | authorized-force | unauthorized-force}
no dot1x port-control
```

Parameter

auto | authorized-force | unauthorized-force — The Control Mode for the port.

auto: In this mode, the port will normally work only after passing the 802.1x Authentication.

authorized-force: In this mode, the port can work normally without passing the 802.1x Authentication.

unauthorized-force: In this mode, the port is forbidden working for its fixed unauthorized status.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the Control Mode for Gigabit Ethernet port 20 as "authorized-force":

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/20
Switch(config-if)#dot1x port-control authorized-force
```

37.13 dot1x port-method

Description

The **dot1x port-method** command is used to configure the control type of IEEE 802.1x for the specified port. By default, the control type is "mac-based". To restore to the default configuration, please use **no dot1x port-method** command.

Syntax

```
dot1x port-method { mac-based | port-based }
no dot1x port-method
```

Parameter

mac-based | port-based —The control type for the port.

mac-based: Any client connected to the port should pass the 802.1x authentication for access.

port-based: All the clients connected to the port can access the network on the condition that any one of the clients has passed the 802.1x Authentication.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the Control Type for Gigabit Ethernet port 20 as "port-based":

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/20
Switch(config-if)#dot1x port-method port-based
```

37.14 dot1x auth-init

Description

The **dot1x auth-init** command is used to initialize the specific client.

Syntax

```
dot1x auth-init [ mac mac-address ]
```

Parameter

mac-address: Enter the MAC address of the client that will be unauthorized.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Initialize the client whose MAC address is a 00:02:58:4f:6c:23 on port 1:

```
Switch(Config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(Config-if)#dot1x auth-init mac 00:02:58:4f:6c:23
```

37.15 dot1x auth-reauth

Description

The **dot1x auth-reauth** command is used to reauthenticate the specific client.

Syntax

```
dot1x auth-reauth [ mac mac-address]
```

Parameter

mac-address: Enter the MAC address of the client that will be reauthenticated.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Reauthenticate the client whose MAC address is a 00:02:58:4f:6c:23 on port 1:

```
Switch(Config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(Config-if)#dot1x auth-reauth mac 00:02:58:4f:6c:23
```

37.16 show dot1x global

Description

The **show dot1x global** command is used to display the global configuration of 801.X.

Syntax

```
show dot1x global
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration of 801.X globally:

```
Switch(config)#show dot1x global
```

37.17 show dot1x interface

Description

The **show dot1x interface** command is used to display all ports or the specified port's configuration information of 801.X.

Syntax

```
show dot1x interface [ gigabitEthernet port]
```

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number. If not specified, the information of all the ports will be displayed.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration information of 801.X for Gigabit Ethernet port 20:

```
Switch(config)#show dot1x interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/20
```

Display the configuration information of 801.X for all Ethernet ports:

```
Switch(config)#show dot1x interface
```

37.18 show dot1x auth-state interface

Description

The **show dot1x auth-state interface** command is used to display the authentication status of each port.

Syntax

```
show dot1x auth-state interface [ fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |  
ten-gigabitEthernet port]
```

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number. If not specified, the information of all the ports will be displayed.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the authentication status of each port:

```
Switch(config)#show dot1x auth-state interface
```

Chapter 38 Port Security Commands

You can limit the number of MAC addresses that can be learned on each port on this page, thus preventing the MAC address table from being exhausted by the attack packets.

38.1 mac address-table max-mac count

Description

The **mac address-table max-mac-count** command is used to enable the port security feature of the port and configure the related parameters. To disable the feature and restore the parameters to defaults on the port, please use **no mac address-table max-mac-count** command.

Syntax

```
mac address-table max-mac-count { [ max-number num ]  
[ exceed-max-learned enable | disable ] [ mode { dynamic | static |  
permanent } ] [ status { forward | drop | disable } ] }  
no mac address-table max-mac-count [ max-number | mode | status ]
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the maximum number of MAC addresses that can be learned on port 1/0/1 as 30, enable exceed-max-learned feature and configure the mode as permanent and the status as drop:

```
Switch (config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1  
Switch(config-if)#mac address-table max-mac-count max-number 30  
exceed-maxlearned enable mode permanent status drop
```

38.2 show mac address-table max-mac-count

Description

The **show mac address-table max-mac-count** command is used to display the port security configuration on each port.

Syntax

```
show mac address-table max-mac-count interface { fastEthernet port |  
gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port }
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the port security configuration on port 1/0/1

```
Switch# show mac address-table max-mac-count interface  
gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

Chapter 39 Port Mirroring Commands

Port Mirroring allows the switch to send a copy of the traffic that passes through specified sources (ports, LAGs or the CPU) to a destination port. It does not affect the switching of network traffic on source ports, LAGs or the CPU. Usually, the monitoring port is connected to data diagnose device, which is used to analyze the monitored packets for monitoring and troubleshooting the network.

39.1 monitor session destination interface

Description

The **monitor session destination interface** command is used to configure the monitoring port. Each monitor session has only one monitoring port. To change the monitoring port, please use the **monitor session destination interface** command by changing the port value. The **no monitor session** command is used to delete the corresponding monitoring port or monitor session.

Syntax

```
monitor session session_num destination interface gigabitEthernet port  
no monitor session session_num destination interface gigabitEthernet  
port  
no monitor session session_num
```

Parameter

session_num — The monitor session number, can only be specified as 1.
port — The monitoring port number.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create monitor session 1 and configure port 1/0/1 as the monitoring port:

```
Switch(config)# monitor session 1 destination interface gigabitEthernet  
1/0/1
```

Delete the monitoring port 1/0/2 from monitor session 1:

```
Switch(config)# no monitor session 1 destination interface
gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

Delete the monitor session 1:

```
Switch(config)# no monitor session 1
```

39.2 monitor session source

Description

The **monitor session source** command is used to configure the monitored interface. To delete the corresponding monitored interface, please use **no monitor session source** command.

Syntax

```
monitor session session_num source { cpu cpu_number | interface
gigabitEthernet port-list | interface port-channel port-channel-id } mode
```

```
no monitor session session_num source { cpu cpu_number | interface
gigabitEthernet port-list | interface port-channel port-channel-id } mode
```

Parameter

session_num—— The monitor session number. It can only be specified as 1.

cpu_number—— The CPU number. It can only be specified as 1.

port-list—— List of the Ethernet port number. It is multi-optional.

lag-list—— List of LAG interfaces. It is multi-optional.

mode —— The monitor mode. There are three options: rx, tx and both. Rx (ingress monitoring mode), means the incoming packets received by the monitored interface will be copied to the monitoring port. Tx (egress monitoring mode), indicates the outgoing packets sent by the monitored interface will be copied to the monitoring port. Both (ingress and egress monitoring), presents the incoming packets received and the outgoing packets sent by the monitored interface will both be copied to the monitoring port.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

1. The monitoring port is corresponding to current interface configuration mode.
2. Monitored ports number is not limited, but it can't be the monitoring port at the same time.
3. Whether the monitoring port and monitored ports are in the same VLAN or not is not demanded strictly.
4. The monitoring port and monitored ports cannot be link-aggregation member.

Example

Create monitor session 1, then configure port 4, 5, 7 as monitored port and enable ingress monitoring:

```
Switch(config)# monitor session 1 source interface gigabitEthernet  
1/0/4-5,1/0/7 rx
```

Delete port 4 in monitor session 1 and its configuration:

```
Switch(config)# no monitor session 1 source interface gigabitEthernet  
1/0/4 rx
```

39.3 show monitor session

Description

The **show monitor session** command is used to display the configuration of port monitoring.

Syntax

```
show monitor session [session_num]
```

Parameter

session_num — The monitor session number, can only be specified as 1. It is optional.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the monitoring configuration of monitor session 1:


```
Switch(config)# show monitor session 1
```

Chapter 40 ACL Commands

ACL (Access Control List) is used to filter data packets by configuring a series of match conditions, operations and time ranges. It provides a flexible and secured access control policy and facilitates you to control the network security.

40.1 access-list create

Description

The **access-list create** command is used to create an ACL.

Syntax

```
access-list create acl-id [name acl-name]
```

```
no access-list create { acl-id }
```

Parameter

acl-id — Enter an ACL ID. The IDs for MAC ACL are from 0 to 499. The IDs for IP ACL are from 500 to 999. The IDs for Combined ACL are from 1000 to 1499. The IDs for IPv6 ACL are from 1500 to 1999.

acl-name — Enter a name to identify the ACL.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create an IP ACL whose ID is 523:

```
Switch(config)# access-list create 523
```

40.2 access-list resequence

Description

The **access-list resequence** command is used to resequence the rules by providing a Start Rule ID and Step value.

Syntax

```
access-list resequence acl-id-or-name start start-rule-id step  
rule-id-step-value
```

Parameter

acl-id-or-name — The ACL ID or name.

start-rule-id — The start rule ID.

rule-id-step-value — The step value.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Resequence the rules of ACL 12 with the start ID as 1 and step value as 5:

```
Switch(config)# access-list resequence 12 start 1 step 5
```

40.3 access-list mac

Description

The **access-list mac** command is used to create MAC ACL. To delete the MAC ACL, please use **no access-list mac**.

Syntax

```
access-list mac acl-id-or-name rule { auto | rule-id } { deny | permit } logging  
{ enable | disable } [smac source-mac smask source-mac-mask ] [dmac  
destination-mac dmask destination-mac-mask ] [type ether-type] [pri  
dot1p-priority] [vid vlan-id] [tseg time-range-name]  
no access-list mac acl-id-or-name rule rule-id
```

Parameter

acl-id-or-name — Enter the ID or name of the ACL that you want to add a rule for.

auto — The rule ID will be assigned automatically and the interval between rule IDs is 5.

rule-id — Assign an ID to the rule.

deny | permit — Specify the action to be taken with the packets that match the rule. By default, it is set to permit. The packets will be discarded if “deny” is selected and forwarded if “permit” is selected.

enable | disable — Enable or disable Logging function for the ACL rule. If "enable " is selected, the times that the rule is matched will be logged every 5 minutes. With ACL Counter trap enabled, a related trap will be generated if the matching times changes.

source-mac — Enter the source MAC address. The format is FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF.

source-mac-mask — Enter the mask of the source MAC address. This is required if a source MAC address is entered. The format is FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF.

destination-mac — Enter the destination MAC address. The format is FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF.

destination-mac-mask — Enter the mask of the destination MAC address. This is required if a destination MAC address is entered. The format is FF:FF:FF:FF:FF:FF.

ether-type — Specify an Ethernet-type with 4 hexadecimal numbers.

dot1p-priority. The user priority ranges from 0 to 7. The default is No Limit.

vlan-id — The VLAN ID ranges from 1 to 4094.

time-range-name — The name of the time-range. The default is No Limit.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create MAC ACL 50 and configure Rule 5 to permit packets with source MAC address 00:34:a2:d4:34:b5:

```
Switch (config)#access-list create 50
```

```
Switch (config-mac-acl)#access-list mac 50 rule 5 permit logging disable
```

```
smac 00:34:a2:d4:34:b5 smask ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

40.4 access-list ip

Description

The **access-list ip** command is used to add IP ACL rule. To delete the corresponding rule, please use **no access-list ip** command. IP ACLs analyze and process data packets based on a series of match conditions, which can be the source IP addresses and destination IP addresses carried in the packets.

Syntax

```
access-list ip acl-id-or-name rule {auto | rule-id} {deny | permit} logging
{enable | disable} [sip sip-address sip-mask sip-address-mask] [dip
dip-address dip-mask dip-address-mask] [dscp dscp-value] [tos tos-value]
[pre pre-value] [protocol protocol] [s-port s-port-number] [s-port-mask
s-port-mask] [d-port d-port-number] [d-port-mask d-port-mask] [tcpflag
tcpflag] [tseg time-range-name]
no access-list ip acl-id-or-name rule rule-id
```

Parameter

acl-id-or-name — Enter the ID or name of the ACL that you want to add a rule for.

auto — The rule ID will be assigned automatically and the interval between rule IDs is 5.

rule-id — Assign an ID to the rule.

deny | permit — Specify the action to be taken with the packets that match the rule. By default, it is set to permit. The packets will be discarded if "deny" is selected and forwarded if "permit" is selected.

logging {enable | disable} — Enable or disable Logging function for the ACL rule. If "enable" is selected, the times that the rule is matched will be logged every 5 minutes. With ACL Counter trap enabled, a related trap will be generated if the matching times changes.

sip-address — Enter the source IP address.

sip-address-mask — Enter the mask of the source IP address. This is required if a source IP address is entered.

dip-address — Enter the destination IP address.

dip-address-mask — Enter the mask of the destination IP address. This is required if a destination IP address is entered.

dscp-value — Specify the DSCP value between 0 and 63.

tos-value——Specify an IP ToS value to be matched between 0 and 15.

pre-value——Specify an IP Precedence value to be matched between 0 and 7.

protocol—— Specify a protocol type.

s-port-number—— Specify the source port number.

s-port-mask—— Specify the source port mask with 4 hexadecimal numbers.

d-port-number—— Specify the destination port number.

d-port-mask —— Specify the destination port mask with 4 hexadecimal numbers.

tcpflag —— For TCP protocol, specify the flag value using either binary numbers or * (for example, 01*010*). The default is *, which indicates that the flag will not be matched. The flags are URG (Urgent flag), ACK (acknowledge flag), PSH(push flag), RST(reset flag),SYN(synchronize flag), and FIN(finish flag).

time-range-name—— The name of the time-range. The default is No Limit.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create IP ACL 600, and configure Rule 1 to permit packets with source IP address 192.168.1.100:

```
Switch (config)#access-list create 600
Switch (config)#access-list ip 600 rule 1 permit logging disable sip
192.168.1.100 sip-mask 255.255.255.255
```

40.5 access-list combined

Description

The **access-list combined** command is used to add Combined ACL rule. To delete the corresponding rule, please use **no access-list extended** command.

Syntax

```
access-list combined acl-id-or-name rule {auto | rule-id} {deny | permit}
logging {enable | disable} [smac source-mac-address smask
source-mac-mask] [dmac dest-mac-address dmask dest-mac-mask] [vid
vlan-id] [type ether-type] [pri priority] [sip source-ip-address sip-mask
source-ip-mask] [dip destination-ip-address dip-mask destination-ip-mask]
[dscp dscp-value] [tos tos-value] [pre pre-value] [protocol protocol [s-port
s-port-number s-port-mask s-port-mask] [d-port d-port-number
d-port-mask d-port-mask] [tcpflag tcpflag] [tseg time-range-name]
no access-list combined acl-id-or-name rule rule-id
```

Parameter

acl-id-or-name — Enter the ID or name of the ACL that you want to add a rule for.

auto — The rule ID will be assigned automatically and the interval between rule IDs is 5.

rule-id — Assign an ID to the rule.

deny | permit — Specify the action to be taken with the packets that match the rule. By default, it is set to permit. The packets will be discarded if "deny" is selected and forwarded if "permit" is selected.

logging {enable | disable} — Enable or disable Logging function for the ACL rule. If "enable" is selected, the times that the rule is matched will be logged every 5 minutes. With ACL Counter trap enabled, a related trap will be generated if the matching times changes.

source-mac-address — Enter the source MAC address.

source-mac-mask — Enter the source MAC address mask.

dest-mac-address — Enter the destination MAC address.

dest-mac-mask — Enter the destination MAC address mask. This is required if a destination MAC address is entered.

vlan-id: The VLAN ID ranges from 1 to 4094.

ether-type — Specify the Ethernet-type with 4 hexadecimal numbers.

priority — The user priority ranges from 0 to 7. The default is No Limit.

source-ip: Enter the source IP address.

source-ip-mask — Enter the mask of the source IP address. It is required if source IP address is entered.

destination-ip — This is required if a source IP address is entered.

destination-ip-mask — Enter the destination IP address mask. This is required if a destination IP address is entered.

dscp-value — Specify the DSCP value between 0 and 63.

tos-value — Specify an IP ToS value to be matched between 0 and 15.

pre-value — Specify an IP Precedence value to be matched between 0 and 7.

protocol — Specify a protocol type.

s-port-number — Specify the source port number.

s-port-mask — Specify the source port mask with 4 hexadecimal numbers.

d-port-number — Specify the destination port number.

d-port-mask — Specify the destination port mask with 4 hexadecimal numbers.

tcpflag — For TCP protocol, specify the flag value using either binary numbers or * (for example, 01*010*). The default is *, which indicates that the flag will not be matched. The flags are URG (Urgent flag), ACK (acknowledge flag), PSH(push flag), RST(reset flag), SYN(synchronize flag), and FIN(finish flag).

time-range-name — The name of the time-range. The default is No Limit.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create Combined ACL 1100 and configure Rule 1 to deny packets with source IP address 192.168.3.100 in VLAN 2:

```
Switch(config)# access-list create 1100
Switch(config)# access-list combined 1100 logging disable rule 1 permit
vid 2 sip 192.168.3.100 sip-mask 255.255.255.255
```

40.6 access-list ipv6

Description

The **access-list ipv6** command is used to add IPv6 ACL rule. To delete the corresponding rule, please use **no access-list ipv6** command. IPv6 ACLs

analyze and process data packets based on a series of match conditions, which can be the source IP addresses and destination IP addresses carried in the packets, the DSCP and flow-label value, etc.

Syntax

```
access-list ipv6 acl-id-or-name rule {auto | rule-id} {deny | permit} logging  
{enable | disable} [class class-value] [flow-label flow-label-value] [sip  
source-ip-address sip-mask source-ip-mask] [dip destination-ip-address  
dip-mask destination-ip-mask] [s-port source-port-number] [d-port  
destination-port-number] [tseg time-range-name]  
no access-list ipv6 acl-id-or-name rule rule-id
```

Parameter

acl-id-or-name — Enter the ID or name of the ACL that you want to add a rule for.

auto — The rule ID will be assigned automatically and the interval between rule IDs is 5.

rule-id — Assign an ID to the rule.

deny | permit — Specify the action to be taken with the packets that match the rule. By default, it is set to permit. The packets will be discarded if "deny" is selected and forwarded if "permit" is selected.

logging {enable | disable} — Enable or disable Logging function for the ACL rule. If "enable" is selected, the times that the rule is matched will be logged every 5 minutes. With ACL Counter trap enabled, a related trap will be generated if the matching times changes.

class-value — Specify a class value to be matched. It ranges from 0 to 63.

flow-label-value — Specify a Flow Label value to be matched.

source-ip-address — Enter the source IP address. Enter the destination IPv6 address to be matched. All types of IPv6 address will be checked. You may enter a complete 128-bit IPv6 address but only the first 64 bits will be valid.

source-ip-mask — Enter the source IP address mask. The mask is required if the source IPv6 address is entered. Enter the mask in complete format (for example, ffff:ffff:0000:ffff). The mask specifies which bits in the source IPv6 address to match the rule.

destination-ip-address — Enter the destination IPv6 address to be matched. All types of IPv6 address will be checked. You may enter a complete 128-bit IPv6 addresses but only the first 64 bits will be valid.

destination-ip-mask: Enter the source IP address mask. The mask is required if the source IPv6 address is entered. Enter the mask in complete format (for example, ffff:ffff:0000:ffff). The mask specifies which bits in the source IPv6 address to match the rule.

source-port-number — Enter the TCP/UDP source port if TCP/UDP protocol is selected.

destination-port-number — Enter the TCP/UDP destination port if TCP/UDP protocol is selected.

time-range-name — The name of the time-range. The default is No Limit.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

User Guidelines

Before binding an IPv6 ACL to a VLAN or interface, you should configure the SDM template as "enterpriseV6" and save your configurations.

Example

Create IPv6 ACL 1600 and configure Rule 1 to deny packets with source IPv6 address CDCD:910A:2222:5498:8475:1111:3900:2020:

```
Switch(config)# access-list create 1600
Switch(config)# access-list ipv6 1600 rule 1 deny logging disable sip
CDCD:910A:2222:5498:8475:1111:3900:2020 sip-mask ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff
```

40.7 access-list action

Description

The **access-list action** command is used to specify a rule to be configured with policies and enter Action Configuration mode. To delete the corresponding policies, please use **no access-list action** command.

Syntax

```
access-list action acl-id-or-name rule rule-id
no access-list action acl-id-or-name rule rule-id
```

Parameter

acl-id-or-name — Enter the ID or name of the ACL.

rule-id— Enter the ID of the ACL rule.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the rule 1 of ACL 200 to be configured with policies:

```
Switch(config)# access-list action 200 rule 1
```

40.8 redirect

Description

The **redirect interface** command is used to define the policy to redirect the matched packets to the desired port. To disable this policy, please use **no redirect interface** command.

Syntax

```
redirect interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |  
ten-gigabitEthernet port }  
no redirect interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |  
ten-gigabitEthernet port }
```

Parameter

port — The destination port to which the packets will be redirected. The default is All.

Command Mode

Action Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Define the policy to redirect the matched packets to port 1/0/1 for rule 1 of ACL 6:

```
Switch(config)# access-list action 6 rule 1  
Switch(config-action)# redirect interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

40.9 s-condition

Description

The **s-condition** command is used to limit the rate of the matched packets. To restore the settings to the defaults, please use **no s-condition**.

Syntax

```
s-condition rate rate burst burst-size osd { none | discard }  
no s-condition
```

Parameter

rate—— Specify a rate, ranging from 0 to 1000000kbps.

burst-size —— Specify the number of bytes allowed in one second ranging from 1 to 128.

osd ——Select either "none" or "discard" as the action to be taken for the packets whose rate is beyond the specified rate. The default is None.

Command Mode

Action Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure a policy for rule 1 of ACL 6: limit the transmission rate of the matched packets as 1000 Kbps and if the number of bytes per second is beyond 100, the packets will be discarded by the switch:

```
Switch(config)#access-list action 6 rule 1  
Switch(config-action)# s-condition rate 1000 burst 100 osd discard
```

40.10 s-mirror

Description

The **s-mirror** command is used to define the policy to mirror the matched packets to the desired port. To disable this policy, please use **no s-mirror** command.

Syntax

```
s-mirror interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |  
ten-gigabitEthernet port }
```

Parameter

port— The destination port to which the packets will be mirrored.

Command Mode

Action Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure a policy for rule 1 of ACL 6: specify the mirror port as Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/2 for the data packets matching this rule:

```
Switch(config)#access-list action 6 rule 1
Switch(config-action)#s-mirror interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
```

40.11 qos-remark

Description

The **qos-remark** command is used to configure QoS Remark function of policy action. To restore the settings to the default, please use **no qos-remark**.

Syntax

```
qos-remark [ dscp dscp] [ priority pri] [dot1p dot1p-pri]
```

```
no qos-remark
```

Parameter

dscp — DSCP of QoS Remark. Specify the DSCP region for the data packets matching the corresponding ACL. DSCP ranges from 0 to 63. By default, it is not limited.

pri — Local Priority of QoS Remark. Specify the local priority for the data packets matching the corresponding ACL. Local Priority ranges from 0 to 7.

dot1p-pri — 802.1P priority of QoS Remark. This remark configuration will change the data packet's 802.1P priority field to the dot1p-pri you set. 802.1P priority ranges from 0 to 7.



Note: The DSCP and dot1p cannot be configured at the same time.

Command Mode

Action Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure a policy for rule 1 of ACL 6: specify the DSCP region as 30 and local priority 2 for the packets matching this rule:

```
Switch(config)#access-list action 6 rule 1
Switch(config-action)# qos-remark dscp 30 priority 2
```

40.12 access bind

Description

The **access-list policy name** command is used to add Policy. To delete the corresponding Policy, please use **no access-list policy name** command. A Policy is used to control the data packets those match the corresponding ACL rules.

Syntax

```
access-list bind acl-id-or-name interface { [ vlan vlan-list ] | [ fastEthernet port-list ] | [ gigabitEthernet port-list ] | [ ten-gigabitEthernet port-list ] }
no access-list bind acl-id-or-name interface { [ vlan vlan-list ] | [ fastEthernet port-list ] | [ gigabitEthernet port-list ] | [ ten-gigabitEthernet port-list ] }
```

Parameter

acl-id-or-name — Enter the ID or name of the ACL that you want to add a rule for.

vlan-list — Specify the ID or the ID list of the VLAN(s) that you want to bind the ACL to. The valid values are from 1 to 4094, for example, 2-3,5.

port-list — Specify the number or the list of the Ethernet port that you want to bind the ACL to.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Bind ACL 1 to port 3 and VLAN 4:

```
Switch(config)#access-list bind 1 interface vlan 4 gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
```

40.13 show access-list

Description

The **show access-list** command is used to display configuration of ACL.

Syntax

```
show access-list acl-id-or-name
```

Parameter

acl-id-or-name — The ID or name of the ACL selected to display the configuration.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration of the MAC ACL whose ID is 20:

```
Switch(config)# show access-list 20
```

40.14 show access-list bind

Description

The **show access-list bind** command is used to display the configuration of ACL binding.

Syntax

```
show access-list bind
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration of Policy bind:

```
Switch(config)# show access-list bind
```

40.15 show access-list status

Description

The **show access-list status** command is used to display usage status of ACL entry resource.

Syntax

```
show access-list status
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the usage status of ACL entry resource:

```
Switch(config)# show access-list status
```

40.16 show access-list counter

Description

The **show access-list counter** command is used to display the packet counter of a specified ACL.

Syntax

```
show access-list acl-id-or-name counter
```

Parameter

acl-id-or-name— The ID or name of the ACL to display.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the packet counter of ACL 100:

```
Switch(config)# show access-list 100 counter
```


40.17 clear access-list

Description

The **clear access-list** command is used to clear the counter of matched packets of a specified ACL or rule.

Syntax

```
clear access-list acl-id-or-name [rule rule-id]
```

Parameter

acl-id-or-name—— The ID or name of the ACL.

rule-id—— The ID of the rule.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Clear the packet counter of ACL 100:

```
Switch(config)# clear access-list 100
```

Chapter 41 IPv4 IMPB Commands

You can bind the IP address, MAC address, VLAN and the connected Port number of the Host together, which can be the condition for the ARP Inspection and IP verify source to filter the packets.

41.1 ip source binding

Description

The **ip source binding** command is used to bind the IP address, MAC address, VLAN ID and the Port number together manually. You can manually bind the IP address, MAC address, VLAN ID and the Port number together in the condition that you have got the related information of the Hosts in the LAN. To delete the IP-MAC-VID-PORT entry from the binding table, please use **no ip source binding index** command.

Syntax

```
ip source binding hostname ip-addr mac-addr vlan vlan-id interface  
{ fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port |  
port-channel port-channel-id } { none | arp-detection | ip-verify-source |  
both }  
no ip source binding index ip-addr
```

Parameter

hostname——The Host Name, which contains 20 characters at most.

ip-addr—— The IP address of the Host.

mac-addr—— The MAC address of the Host.

vlan-id——The VLAN ID needed to be bound, ranging from 1 to 4094.

port—— The number of port connected to the Host.

none | arp-detection | ip-verify-source | both ——The protect type for the entry. "arp-detection" indicates ARP detection; "ip-verify-source" indicates IP source filter; "none" indicates applying none; "both" indicates applying both.

ip-addr—— The IP address of the entry to be deleted.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Bind an ACL entry with the IP 192.168.0.1, MAC 00:00:00:00:00:01, VLAN ID 2 and the Port number 5 manually. And then enable the entry for the ARP detection:

```
Switch(config)#ip source binding host1 192.168.0.1 00:00:00:00:00:01 vlan  
2 interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5 arp-detection
```

Delete the IP-MAC-VID-PORT entry with the index 5:

```
Switch(config)#no ip source binding index 5
```

41.2 ip dhcp snooping

Description

The **ip dhcp snooping** command is used to enable DHCP Snooping function globally. To disable DHCP Snooping function globally, please use **no ip dhcp snooping** command. DHCP Snooping functions to monitor the process of the Host obtaining the IP address from DHCP server, and record the IP address, MAC address, VLAN and the connected Port number of the Host for automatic binding.

Syntax

ip dhcp snooping

no ip dhcp snooping

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCP Snooping function globally:

```
Switch(config)#ip dhcp snooping
```

41.3 ip dhcp snooping vlan

Description

The **ip dhcp snooping vlan** command is used to enable DHCP Snooping function on a specified VLAN. To disable DHCP Snooping function on this VLAN, please use **no ip dhcp snooping vlan** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp snooping vlan vlan-range  
no ip dhcp snooping vlan vlan-range
```

Parameter

vlan-range — Specify the VLANs to enable the DHCP snooping function, in the format of 1-3, 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCP Snooping function on VLAN 1,4,6-7:

```
Switch(config)#ip dhcp snooping vlan 1,4,6-7
```

41.4 ip dhcp snooping max-entries

Description

The **ip dhcp snooping max-entries** command is used to configure the maximum number of entries that can be learned on a port via DHCP Snooping. To restore to the default setting, please use **no ip dhcp snooping max-entries** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp snooping max-entries value  
no ip dhcp snooping max-entries
```

Syntax

value — Enter the value of maximum number of entries that can be learned on the port via DHCP Snooping.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the maximum number of entries that can be learned on port 1 as 100:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#ip dhcp snooping max-entries 100
```

41.5 show ip source binding

Description

The **show ip source binding** command is used to display the IP-MAC-VID-PORT binding table.

Syntax

```
show ip source binding
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IP-MAC-VID-PORT binding table:

```
Switch(config)#show ip source binding
```

41.6 show ip dhcp snooping

Description

The **show ip dhcp snooping** command is used to display the running status of DHCP Snooping.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp snooping
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the running status of DHCP Snooping:

```
Switch#show ip dhcp snooping
```

41.7 show ip dhcp snooping interface

Description

The **show ip dhcp snooping interface** command is used to display the DHCP Snooping configuration of a desired Gigabit Ethernet port/port channel or of all Ethernet ports/port channels.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp snooping interface [ gigabitEthernet port | port-channel  
port-channel-id]
```

Parameters

port— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DHCP Snooping configuration of all Ethernet ports and port channels:

```
Switch#show ip dhcp snooping interface
```

Display the DHCP Snooping configuration of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/5:

```
Switch#show ip dhcp snooping interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
```

Chapter 42 IPv6 IMPB Commands

You can bind the IPv6 address, MAC address, VLAN and the connected Port number of the Host together, which can be the condition for the ARP Inspection and IP verify source to filter the packets.

42.1 Ipv6 source binding

Description

The **ipv6 source binding** command is used to bind the IPv6 address, MAC address, VLAN ID and the Port number together manually. You can manually bind the IPv6 address, MAC address, VLAN ID and the Port number together in the condition that you have got the related information of the Hosts in the LAN. To delete the IPv6-MAC-VID-PORT entry from the binding table, please use **no ipv6 source binding index** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 source binding hostname ipv6-addr mac-addr vlan vlan-id interface  
{ fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port |  
port-channel port-channel-id } { none | nd-detection | ipv6-verify-source |  
both }  
no ipv6 source binding index ipv6-addr
```

Parameter

hostname——The Host Name, which contains 20 characters at most.

ipv6-addr—— The IP address of the Host.

mac-addr—— The MAC address of the Host.

vlan-id——The VLAN ID needed to be bound, ranging from 1 to 4094.

port—— The number of port connected to the Host.

none | nd-detection | ipv6-verify-source | both ——The protect type for the entry. "nd-detection" indicates ND detection; "ipv6-verify-source" indicates IPv6 source filter; "none" indicates applying none; "both" indicates applying both.

ipv6-addr—— The IPv6 address of the entry to be deleted.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

The following example shows how to bind an entry with the hostname host1, IPv6 address 2001:0:9d38:90d5::34, MAC address AA-BB-CC-DD-EE-FF, VLAN ID 10, port number 1/0/5, and enable this entry for ND Detection.

```
Switch(config)# ipv6 source binding host1 2001:0:9d38:90d5::34
aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:ff vlan 10 interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5 nd-detection
```

42.2 ipv6 dhcp snooping

Description

The **ipv6 dhcp snooping** command is used to enable DHCPv6 Snooping function globally. To disable DHCPv6 Snooping function globally, please use **no ipv6 dhcp snooping** command. DHCPv6 Snooping functions to monitor the process of the Host obtaining the IP address from DHCPv6 server, and record the IPv6 address, MAC address, VLAN and the connected Port number of the Host for automatic binding.

Syntax

```
ipv6 dhcp snooping
no ipv6 dhcp snooping
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCPv6 Snooping function globally:

```
Switch(config)#ipv6 dhcp snooping
```

42.3 ipv6 dhcp snooping vlan

Description

The **ipv6 dhcp snooping vlan** command is used to enable DHCP Snooping function on a specified VLAN. To disable DHCP Snooping function on this VLAN, please use **no ipv6 dhcp snooping vlan** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 dhcp snooping vlan vlan-range  
no ipv6 dhcp snooping vlan vlan-range
```

Parameter

vlan-range — Specify the VLANs to enable the DHCP snooping function, in the format of 1-3, 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCPv6 Snooping function on VLAN 1,4,6-7:

```
Switch(config)#ipv6 dhcp snooping vlan 1,4,6-7
```

42.4 ipv6 dhcp snooping max-entries

Description

The **ipv6 dhcp snooping max-entries** command is used to configure the maximum number of entries that can be learned on a port via DHCPv6 Snooping. To restore to the default setting, please use **no ipv6 dhcp snooping max-entries** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 dhcp snooping max-entries value  
no ipv6 dhcp snooping max-entries
```

Syntax

value: Enter the value of maximum number of entries that can be learned on the port via DHCPv6 Snooping.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the maximum number of entries that can be learned on port 1 as 100:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(config-if)#ipv6 dhcp snooping max-entries 100
```

42.5 ipv6 nd snooping

Description

The **ipv6 nd snooping** command is used to enable ND snooping function globally. To disable ND Snooping function globally, please use **no ipv6 nd snooping** command. ND Snooping functions to monitor the process of the duplication address detection, and record the IPv6 address, MAC address, VLAN and the connected Port number of the Host for automatic binding.

Syntax

```
ipv6 nd snooping
no ipv6 nd snooping
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the ND snooping function globally:

```
T160G-28TS(config)#ipv6 nd snooping
```

42.6 ipv6 nd snooping vlan

Description

The **ipv6 nd snooping vlan** command is used to enable ND snooping function on a specified VLAN. To disable ND Snooping function on this VLAN, please use **no ipv6 nd snooping vlan** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 nd snooping vlan vlan-range
```

```
no ipv6 nd snooping vlan vlan-range
```

Parameter

vlan-range—— Specify the VLANs to enable the ND snooping function, in the format of 1-3, 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the ND snooping function on VLAN 1,4,6-7:

```
Switch(config)#ipv6 nd snooping vlan 1,4,6-7
```

42.7 ipv6 nd snooping max-entries

Description

The **ipv6 nd snooping max-entries** command is used to specify the maximum number of binding entries that are allow to be bound to a port. To return the default, please use **no ipv6 nd snooping max-entries** command.

Syntax

ipv6 nd snooping max-entries *value*

no ipv6 nd snooping max-entries

Parameter

value — Specify the maximum number of ND snooping entries on this interface.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the maximum number of binding entries from ND Snooping of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/2 is 100:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)#ipv6 nd snooping max-entries 100
```

42.8 show ipv6 source binding

Description

The **show ipv6 source binding** command is used to display the IPv6-MAC-VID- PORT binding table.

Syntax

show ipv6 source binding

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IPv6-MAC-VID-PORT binding table:

```
Switch(config)#show ipv6 source binding
```

42.9 show ipv6 dhcp snooping

Description

The **show ipv6 dhcp snooping** command is used to display the running status of DHCPv6 Snooping.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 dhcp snooping
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the running status of DHCPv6 Snooping:

```
Switch#show ipv6 dhcp snooping
```

42.10 show ipv6 dhcp snooping interface

Description

The **show ipv6 dhcp snooping interface** command is used to display the DHCPv6 Snooping configuration of a desired Gigabit Ethernet port/port channel or of all Ethernet ports/port channels.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 dhcp snooping interface [ gigabitEthernet port | port-channel  
port-channel-id]
```

Parameters

port— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DHCPv6 Snooping configuration of all Ethernet ports and port channels:

```
Switch#show ipv6 dhcp snooping interface
```

Display the DHCPv6 Snooping configuration of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/5:

```
Switch#show ipv6 dhcp snooping interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
```

42.11 show ipv6 nd snooping

Description

The **show ipv6 nd snooping** command is used to display the running status of ND Snooping.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 nd snooping
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the running status of ND Snooping:

```
Switch#show ipv6 nd snooping
```

Chapter 43 IP Verify Source Commands

IP Verify Source is to filter the IP packets based on the IP-MAC Binding entries. Only the packets matched to the IP-MAC Binding rules can be processed, which can enhance the bandwidth utility.

43.1 ip verify source

Description

The **ip verify source** command is used to configure the IP Verify Source mode for a specified port. To disable the IP Verify Source function, please use **no ip verify source** command.

Syntax

```
ip verify source { sip+mac | sip }  
no ip verify source
```

Parameter

sip+mac — Security type. "sip+mac" indicates that only the packets with its source IP address, source MAC address and port number matched to the IP-MAC binding rules can be processed.

sip — Security type. "sip" indicates that only the packets with its source IP address and port number matched to the IP-MAC binding rules can be processed.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the IP Verify Source function for Gigabit Ethernet ports 5-10. Configure that only the packets with its source IP address, source MAC address and port number matched to the IP-MAC binding rules can be processed:


```
Switch(config)#interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/5-10
Switch(config-if-range)#ip verify source sip+mac
```

43.2 ip verify source logging

Description

The **ip verify source logging** command is used to enable the log feature. With this feature enabled, the switch will generate a log when illegal packets are received. To disable the log feature, please use **no ip verify source logging** command.

Syntax

```
ip verify source logging
no ip verify source logging
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the log feature to make the switch generate logs when receiving illegal packets:

```
Switch(config)#ip verify source logging
```

43.3 show ip verify source

Description

The **show ip verify source** command is used to display the IP Verify Source configuration information.

Syntax

```
show ip verify source
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IP Verify Source configuration information:

```
Switch(config)#show ip verify source
```

43.4 show ip verify source interface

Description

The **show ip verify source interface** command is used to display the IP verify source configuration of a desired Gigabit Ethernet port.

Syntax

```
show ip verify source interface [fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |  
ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id]
```

Parameters

port—— The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id—— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IP verify source configuration of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/5:

```
Switch#show ip verify source interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
```

Chapter 44 IPv6 Verify Source Commands

IPv6 Verify Source is to filter the IPv6 packets based on the IPv6-MAC Binding entries. Only the packets matched to the IPv6-MAC Binding rules can be processed, which can enhance the bandwidth utility.

Before configuring IPv6 Verify Source feature, you should configure the SDM template as "enterpriseV6" and save your configurations.

44.1 ipv6 verify source

Description

The **ipv6 verify source** command is used to configure the IPv6 Verify Source mode for a specified port. To disable the IPv6 Verify Source function, please use **no ipv6 verify source** command.

Syntax

ipv6 verify source { sipv6+mac | sipv6 }

no ipv6 verify source

Parameter

sipv6+mac — Security type. "sipv6+mac" indicates that only the packets with its source IPv6 address, source MAC address and port number matched to the IPv6-MAC binding rules can be processed.

sipv6 — Security type. "sipv6" indicates that only the packets with its source IPv6 address and port number matched to the IPv6-MAC binding rules can be processed.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the IPv6 Verify Source function for Gigabit Ethernet ports 5-10. Configure that only the packets with its source IPv6 address, source MAC

address and port number matched to the IPv6-MAC binding rules can be processed:

```
Switch(config)#interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/5-10
Switch(config-if-range)#ipv6 verify source sipv6+mac
```

44.2 show ipv6 verify source

Description

The **show ipv6 verify source** command is used to display the IPv6 Verify Source configuration information.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 verify source
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IPv6 Verify Source configuration information:

```
Switch(config)#show ipv6 verify source
```

44.3 show ipv6 verify source interface

Description

The **show ipv6 verify source interface** command is used to display the IPv6 verify source configuration of a desired Gigabit Ethernet port.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 verify source interface gigabitEthernet port
```

Parameters

port— The Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the IPv6 verify source configuration of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/5:

```
Switch#show ipv6 verify source interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
```

Chapter 45 DHCPv4 Filter Commands

DHCPv4 Filter function allows the user to not only to restrict all DHCP Server packets but also to receive any specified DHCP server packet by any specified DHCP client, it is useful when one or more DHCP servers are present on the network and both provide DHCP services to different distinct groups of clients.

45.1 ip dhcp filter

Description

The **ip dhcp filter** command is used to enable DHCP Filter function globally. To disable DHCP Filter function globally, please use **no ip dhcp filter** command.

Syntax

ip dhcp filter
no ip dhcp filter

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCP Filter function globally:

```
Switch(config)#ip dhcp filter
```

45.2 ip dhcp filter (interface)

Description

The **ip dhcp filter (interface)** command is used to enable DHCP Filter function on a specified port. To disable DHCP Filter function on this port, please use **no ip dhcp filter (interface)** command.

Syntax

ip dhcp filter
no ip dhcp filter

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCP Filter on port 1/0/1

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(Config-if)#ip dhcp filter
```

45.3 ip dhcp filter mac-verify

Description

The **ip dhcp filter mac-verify** command is used to enable the MAC Verify feature. To disable the MAC Verify feature, please use **no ip dhcp filter mac-verify** command. There are two fields of the DHCP packet containing the MAC address of the Host. The MAC Verify feature is to compare the two fields and discard the packet if the two fields are different.

Syntax

ip dhcp filter mac-verify
no ip dhcp filter mac-verify

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the MAC Verify feature for the Gigabit Ethernet port 10/2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)#ip dhcp filter mac-verify
```

45.4 ip dhcp filter limit rate

Description

The **ip dhcp filter limit rate** command is used to enable the Flow Control feature for the DHCP packets. The excessive DHCP packets will be discarded. To restore to the default configuration, please use **no ip dhcp filter limit rate** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp filter limit rate value
no ip dhcp filter limit rate
```

Parameter

value — The value of Flow Control. The options are 5/10/15/20/25/30 (packet/second). The default value is 0, which stands for "disable".

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the Flow Control of GigabitEthernet port 2 as 20 pps:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)#ip dhcp filter limit rate 20
```


45.5 ip dhcp filter decline rate

Description

The **ip dhcp filter decline rate** command is used to enable the Decline Protect feature and configure the rate limit on DHCP Decline packets. The excessive DHCP Decline packets will be discarded. To disable the Decline Protect feature, please use **no ip dhcp filter decline rate** command.

Syntax

ip dhcp filter decline rate *value*

no ip dhcp filter decline rate

Parameter

value — Specify the rate limit of DHCP Decline packets, and the optional values are 0, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25 and 30 (units:packet/second). Its default value is 0, which stands for "disable".

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the rate limit of DHCP Decline packets as 20 packets per second on Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)#ip dhcp filter decline 20
```

45.6 ip dhcp filter server permit-entry

Description

The **ip dhcp filter server permit-entry** command is used to add entry for the legal DHCP server. To restore to the default option, please use **no ip dhcp snooping information strategy** command.

Syntax

```
ip dhcp filter server permit-entry server-ip ipAddr client-mac macAddr  
interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet  
port | interface port-channel port-channel-id}
```

```
no ip dhcp filter server permit-entry server-ip ipAddr client-mac macAddr  
interface { fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet  
port | interface port-channel port-channel-id}
```

Parameter

ipAddr—— Specify the IP address of the legal DHCPv4 server.

macAddr —— Specify the MAC address of the DHCP Client. The value “all” means all client mac addresses.

port-list / port-channel-id—— Specify the port that the legal DHCPv4 server is connected to.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create an entry for the legal DHCPv4 server whose IP address is 192.168.0.100 and connected port number is 1/0/1 without client MAC address restricted:

```
Switch(config)#ip dhcp filter server permit-entry server-ip 192.168.0.100  
client-mac all interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

45.7 show ip dhcp filter

Description

The **show ip dhcp filter** command is used to display the configuration of DHCP Filter.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp filter
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DHCP Filter configuration:

```
Switch#show ip dhcp filter
```

45.8 show ip dhcp filter interface

Description

The **show ip dhcp filter interface** command is used to display the configuration of DHCP Filter on ports.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp filter interface [fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id]
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DHCP Filter configuration on port 1/0/3:

```
Switch#show ip dhcp filter interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
```

45.9 show ip dhcp filter server permit-entry

Description

The **show ip dhcp filter server permit-entry** command is used to display the legal server configuration.

Syntax

```
show ip dhcp filter server permit-entry
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the legal DHCP server configuration:

```
Switch#show ip dhcp filter server permit-entry
```

Chapter 46 DHCPv6 Filter Commands

DHCPv6 Filter function allows the user to not only to restrict all DHCPv6 Server packets but also to receive any specified DHCPv6 server packet by any specified DHCPv6 client, it is useful when one or more DHCPv6 servers are present on the network and both provide DHCPv6 services to different distinct groups of clients.

46.1 ipv6 dhcp filter

Description

The **ipv6 dhcp filter** command is used to enable DHCP Filter function globally. To disable DHCPv6 Filter function globally, please use **no ipv6 dhcp filter** command.

Syntax

ipv6 dhcp filter
no ipv6 dhcp filter

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCPv6 Filter function globally:

```
Switch(config)#ipv6 dhcp filter
```

46.2 ipv6 dhcp filter (interface)

Description

The **ipv6 dhcp filter (interface)** command is used to enable DHCPv6 Filter function on a specified port. To disable DHCPv6v Filter function on this port, please use **no ipv6 dhcp filter (interface)** command.

Syntax

ipv6 dhcp filter
no ipv6 dhcp filter

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCPv6 Filter on port 1/0/1

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
Switch(Config-if)#ipv6 dhcp filter
```

46.3 ipv6 dhcp filter limit rate

Description

The **ipv6 dhcp filter limit rate** command is used to enable the Flow Control feature for the DHCPv6 packets. The excessive DHCPv6 packets will be discarded. To restore to the default configuration, please use **no ipv6 dhcp filter limit rate** command.

Syntax

ipv6 dhcp filter limit rate *value*
no ipv6 dhcp filter limit rate

Parameter

value — The value of Flow Control. The options are 5/10/15/20/25/30 (packet/second). The default value is 0, which stands for "disable".

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the Flow Control of GigabitEthernet port 2 as 20 pps:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)#ipv6 dhcp filter limit rate 20
```

46.4 ipv6 dhcp filter decline rate

Description

The **ipv6 dhcp filter decline rate** command is used to enable the Decline Protect feature and configure the rate limit on DHCP Decline packets. The excessive DHCPv6 Decline packets will be discarded. To disable the Decline Protect feature, please use **no ipv6 dhcp filter decline rate** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 dhcp filter decline rate value
no ipv6 dhcp filter decline rate
```

Parameter

value — Specify the rate limit of DHCPv6 Decline packets, and the optional values are 0, 5, 10, 15, 20, 25 and 30 (units:packet/second). Its default value is 0, which stands for "disable".

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet / interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the rate limit of DHCPv6 Decline packets as 20 packets per second on Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/2:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)#ipv6 dhcp filter decline 20
```

46.5 ipv6 dhcp filter server permit-entry

Description

The **ipv6 dhcp filter server permit-entry** command is used to add entry for the legal DHCPv6 server. To restore to the default option, please use **no ipv6 dhcp snooping information strategy** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 dhcp filter server permit-entry server-ip ipAddr interface
{ fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port |
interface port-channel port-channel-id }
no ipv6 dhcp filter server permit-entry server-ip ipAddr interface
{ fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port |
interface port-channel port-channel-id }
```

Parameter

ipAddr—— Specify the IPv6 address of the legal DHCPv6 server.

port-list / *port-channel-id*—— Specify the port that the legal DHCPv6 server is connected to.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Create an entry for the legal DHCPv6 server whose IP address is 192.168.0.100 and connected port number is 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)#ipv6 dhcp filter server permit-entry server-ip 2003::1
interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```


46.6 show ipv6 dhcp filter

Description

The **show ipv6 dhcp filter** command is used to display the configuration of DHCPv6 Filter.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 dhcp filter
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DHCPv6 Filter configuration:

```
Switch#show ipv6 dhcp filter
```

46.7 show ipv6 dhcp filter interface

Description

The **show ipv6 dhcp filter interface** command is used to display the configuration of DHCPv6 Filter on ports.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 dhcp filter interface [fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |  
ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id]
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DHCPv6 Filter configuration on port 1/0/3:

```
Switch#show ipv6 dhcp filter interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
```

46.8 show ip dhcp filter server permit-entry

Description

The **show ipv6 dhcp filter server permit-entry** command is used to display the legal server configuration.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 dhcp filter server permit-entry
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the legal DHCPv6 server configuration:

```
Switch#show ipv6 dhcp filter server permit-entry
```

Chapter 47 DoS Defend Commands

DoS (Denial of Service) Attack is to occupy the network bandwidth maliciously by the network attackers or the evil programs sending a lot of service requests to the Host. With the DoS Defend enabled, the switch can analyze the specific field of the received packets and provide the defend measures to ensure the normal working of the local network.

47.1 ip dos-prevent

Description

The **ip dos-prevent** command is used to enable the DoS defend function globally. To disable the DoS defend function, please use **no ip dos-prevent** command.

Syntax

```
ip dos-prevent
no ip dos-prevent
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DoS defend function globally:

```
Switch(config)#ip dos-prevent
```

47.2 ip dos-prevent type

Description

The **ip dos-prevent type** command is used to select the DoS Defend Type. To disable the corresponding Defend Type, please use **no ip dos-prevent type** command.

Syntax

ip dos-prevent type { land | scan-synfin | xma-scan | null-scan | port-less-1024 | blat | ping-flood | syn-flood | win-nuke | ping-of-death | smurf }

no ip dos-prevent type { land | scan-synfin | xma-scan | null-scan | port-less-1024 | blat | ping-flood | syn-flood | win-nuke | ping-of-death | smurf }

Parameter

land —The attacker sends a specific fake SYN (synchronous) packet to the destination host. Because both of the source IP address and the destination IP address of the SYN packet are set to be the IP address of the host, the host will be trapped in an endless circle of building the initial connection.

scan-synfin —The attacker sends the packet with its SYN field and the FIN field set to 1. The SYN field is used to request initial connection whereas the FIN field is used to request disconnection. Therefore, the packet of this type is illegal.

xma-scan —The attacker sends the illegal packet with its TCP index, FIN, URG and PSH field set to 1.

null-scan —The attacker sends the illegal packet with its TCP index and all the control fields set to 0. During the TCP connection and data transmission, the packets with all control fields set to 0 are considered illegal.

port-less-1024 —The attacker sends the illegal packet with its TCP SYN field set to 1 and source port smaller than 1024.

blat —The attacker sends the illegal packet with the same source port and destination port on Layer 4 and with its URG field set to 1. Similar to the Land Attack, the system performance of the attacked host is reduced because the Host circularly attempts to build a connection with the attacker.

ping-flood —The attacker floods the destination system with Ping packets, creating a broadcast storm that makes it impossible for the system to respond to legal communication.

syn-flood —The attacker uses a fake IP address to send TCP request packets to the server. Upon receiving the request packets, the server responds with SYN-ACK packets. Since the IP address is fake, no response will be returned. The server will keep on sending SYN-ACK packets. If the attacker sends overflowing fake request packets, the network resource will be occupied maliciously and the requests of the legal clients will be denied.

win-nuke —Because the Operation System with bugs cannot correctly process the URG (Urgent Pointer) of TCP packets, the attacker sends this

type of packets to the TCP port 139 (NetBIOS) of the host with the Operation System bugs, which will cause the host with a blue screen.

ping-of-death — Ping of Death attack means that the attacker sends abnormal ping packets larger than 65535 bytes to cause system crash on the target computer.

smurf — Smurf attack is a distributed denial-of-service attack in which large numbers of Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) packets with the intended victim's spoofed source IP are broadcast to a computer network using an IP broadcast address. Most devices on a network will, by default, respond to this by sending a reply to the source IP address. If the number of machines on the network that receive and respond to these packets is very large, the victim's computer will be flooded with traffic.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DoS Defend Type named Land attack:

```
Switch(config)#ip dos-prevent type land
```

47.3 show ip dos-prevent

Description

The **show ip dos-prevent** command is used to display the DoS information of the detected DoS attack, including enable/disable status, the DoS Defend Type, the count of the attack, etc.

Syntax

```
show ip dos-prevent
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the DoS information of the detected DoS attack globally:

```
Switch(config)#show ip dos-prevent
```

Chapter 48 DLDP Commands

DLDP (Device Link Detection Protocol) is used to monitor the link state of fiber-optic or twisted-pair Ethernet cables. When a unidirectional link is detected, the corresponding port will be shut down automatically or manually (depending on the shut mode configured).

48.1 dldp (global)

Description

The **dldp** command is used to enable the DLDP function globally. To disable it, please use **no dldp** command.

Syntax

dldp
no dldp

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DLDP function globally:

```
Switch(config)# dldp
```

48.2 dldp interval

Description

The **dldp interval** command is used to define the interval of sending advertisement packets on ports that are in the advertisement state.

Syntax

dldp interval *interval-time*

Parameter

interval-time — The interval of sending advertisement packets. It ranges from 1 to 30 seconds. By default, it is 5 seconds.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the interval of sending advertisement packets as 10 seconds:

```
Switch(config)# dldp interval 10
```

48.3 dldp shut-mode

Description

The **dldp shut-mode** command is used to configure the shutdown mode when a unidirectional link is detected.

Syntax

```
dldp shut-mode { auto /manual }
```

Parameter

auto — The switch automatically shuts down ports when a unidirectional link is detected. By default, the shut-mode is auto.

manual — The switch displays an alert when a unidirectional link is detected. The operation to shut down the unidirectional link ports is accomplished by the users.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the shut-mode as manual:

```
Switch(config)# dldp shut-mode manual
```


48.4 dldp(interface)

Description

The **dldp** command is used to enable the DLDP function of the specified port. To disable it, please use **no dldp** command.

Syntax

dldp
no dldp

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DLDP function of ports 1/0/2-4:

```
Switch (config)# interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/2-4
Switch (config-if-range)# dldp
```

48.5 show dldp

Description

The **show dldp** command is used to display the global configuration of DLDP function such as DLDP global state, DLDP interval and shut mode.

Syntax

show dldp

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the global configuration of DLDP function:

```
Switch# show dldp
```

48.6 show dldp interface

Description

The **show dldp interface** command is used to display the configuration and state of the specified Ethernet port. By default, the configuration and state of all the ports will be displayed.

Syntax

```
show dldp interface [gigabitEthernet port]
```

Parameter

port—— The Gigabit Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration and state of all ports:

```
Switch# show dldp interface
```

Display the configuration and state of port 1/0/5:

```
Switch# show dldp interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
```

Chapter 49 SNMP Commands

SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) functions are used to manage the network devices for a smooth communication, which can facilitate the network administrators to monitor the network nodes and implement the proper operation.

49.1 snmp-server

Description

The **snmp-server** command is used to enable the SNMP function. By default, it is disabled. To return to the default configuration, please use **no snmp-server** command.

Syntax

```
snmp-server  
no snmp-server
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the SNMP function:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server
```

49.2 snmp-server view

Description

The **snmp-server view** command is used to add View. To delete the corresponding View, please use **no snmp-server view** command. The OID (Object Identifier) of the SNMP packets is used to describe the managed objects of the switch, and the MIB (Management Information Base) is the set of the OIDs. The SNMP View is created for the SNMP management station to manage MIB objects.

Syntax

```
snmp-server view name mib-oid{ include | exclude }  
no snmp-server view name mib-oid
```

Parameter

name — The entry name of View, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. Each View includes several entries with the same name.

mib-oid — MIB Object ID. It is the Object Identifier (OID) for the entry of View, ranging from 1 to 61 characters.

include | exclude — View Type, with include and exclude options. They represent the view entry can/cannot be managed by the SNMP management station individually.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add a View named view1, configuring the OID as 1.3.6.1.6.3.20, and this OID can be managed by the SNMP management station:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server view view1 1.3.6.1.6.3.20 include
```

49.3 snmp-server group

Description

The **snmp-server group** command is used to manage and configure the SNMP group. To delete the corresponding SNMP group, please use **no snmp-server group** command. SNMP v3 provides the VACM (View-based Access Control Model) and USM (User-Based Security Model) mechanisms for authentication. The users in the SNMP Group can manage the device via the Read View, Write View and Notify View. And the authentication mode and the privacy mode guarantee the high security for the communication between the management station and the managed device.

Syntax

```
snmp-server group name [ smode v3 ] [ slev { noAuthNoPriv | authNoPriv | authPriv } ] [ read read-view ] [ write write-view ] [ notify notify-view ]
```

```
no snmp-server group name smode v3 slev { noAuthNoPriv | authNoPriv | authPriv }
```

Parameter

name — The SNMP Group name, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. The Group Name, Security Model and Security Level compose the identifier of the

SNMP Group. These three items of the Users in one group should be the same.

v3 — The security mode for the group, v3 indicates SNMPv3, the most secure level.

slev — The Security Level of SNMP v3 Group. There are three options, including noAuthNoPriv (No authentication algorithm but a user name match is applied to check packets, and no privacy algorithm is applied to encrypt them), authNoPriv (An authentication algorithm is applied to check packets, but no privacy algorithm is applied to encrypt them) and authPriv (An authentication algorithm and a privacy algorithm are applied to check and encrypt packets). By default, the Security Level is noAuthNoPriv. There is no need to configure this in SNMP v1 Mode and SNMP v2c Mode.

read-view — Select the View to be the Read View. The management access is restricted to read-only, and changes cannot be made to the assigned SNMP View.

write-view — Select the View to be the Write View. The management access is writing only and changes can be made to the assigned SNMP View. The View defined both as the Read View and the Write View can be read and modified.

notify-view — Select the View to be the Notify View. The management station can receive notification messages of the assigned SNMP view generated by the switch's SNMP agent.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add a group, and configure the name as group 1, the Security Model as SNMP v3, the security level as authNoPriv, the management access to the assigned View viewDefault as read-write, besides the notification messages sent by View viewDefault can be received by Management station:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server group group1 smode v3 slev authNoPriv read  
viewDefault write viewDefault notify viewDefault
```

Delete group 1:

```
Switch(config)# no snmp-server group group1 smode v3 slev authNoPriv
```

49.4 snmp-server user

Description

The **snmp-server user** command is used to add User. To delete the corresponding User, please use **no snmp-server user** command. The User in an SNMP Group can manage the switch via the management station software. The User and its Group have the same security level and access right.

Syntax

```
snmp-server user name { local | remote } group-name [ smode v3 ] [ slev noAuthNoPriv ] [ cmode none ] [ cpwd confirm-pwd ] [ emode none ] [ epwd encrypt-pwd ]
```

```
snmp-server user name { local | remote } group-name [ smode v3 ] slev authNoPriv cmode { MD5 | SHA } cpwd confirm-pwd [ emode none ] [ epwd encrypt-pwd ]
```

```
snmp-server user name { local | remote } group-name [ smode v3 ] slev authPriv cmode { MD5 | SHA } cpwd confirm-pwd emode DES epwd encrypt-pwd
```

```
no snmp-server user name
```

Parameter

name — User Name, ranging from 1 to 16 characters.

local | remote — User Type, with local and remote options. Local indicates that the user is connected to a local SNMP engine, while remote means that the user is connected to a remote SNMP engine. As the remote engine ID and user password are used to compute the authentication and privacy digests, before configuring a remote user, you need to set the remote engine ID first.

group-name — The Group Name of the User. The User is classified to the corresponding Group according to its Group Name, Security Model and Security Level.

v3 — The security mode for the user. v3 indicates SNMPv3, the most secure model.

slev — The Security Level of SNMP v3 User. There are three options, including noAuthNoPriv (No authentication algorithm but a user name match is applied to check packets, and no privacy algorithm is applied to encrypt them), authNoPriv (An authentication algorithm is applied to check packets, but no privacy algorithm is applied to encrypt them) and authPriv (An authentication algorithm and a privacy algorithm are applied to check and

encrypt packets). The security level from lowest to highest is: noAuthNoPriv, authNoPriv, authPriv, and the default is noAuthNoPriv. The security level of the user should not be lower than the group it belongs to.

cmode — The Authentication Mode of the SNMP v3 User, with none, MD5 and SHA options. None indicates no authentication method is used, MD5 indicates the port authentication is performed via HMAC-MD5 algorithm and SHA indicates the port authentication is performed via SHA (Secure Hash Algorithm). SHA authentication mode has a higher security than MD5 mode. By default, the Authentication Mode is "none".

confirm-pwd — Authentication Password, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. The question marks and spaces are not allowed. This password in the configuration file will be displayed in the symmetric encrypted form.

emode — The Privacy Mode of the SNMP v3 User, with none and DES options. None indicates no privacy method is used, and DES indicates DES encryption method is used. By default, the Privacy Mode is "none".

encrypt-pwd — Privacy Password, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. The question marks and spaces are not allowed. This password in the configuration file will be displayed in the symmetric encrypted form.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add Local User admin to Group group2, and configure the Security Model of the user as v3, the Security Level of the group as authPriv, the Authentication Mode of the user as MD5, the Authentication Password as 11111, the Privacy Mode as DES, and the Privacy Password as 22222:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server user admin local group2 smode v3 slev  
authPriv cmode MD5 cpwd 11111 emode DES epwd 22222
```

49.5 snmp-server community

Description

The **snmp-server community** command is used to add Community. To delete the corresponding Community, please use **no snmp-server community** command. SNMP v1 and SNMP v2c adopt community name

authentication. The community name can limit access to the SNMP agent from SNMP network management station, functioning as a password.

Syntax

```
snmp-server community name { read-only | read-write } mib-view  
no snmp-server community name
```

Parameter

name — Community Name, ranging from 1 to 16 characters.

read-only | read-write — The access rights of the community, with read-only and read-write options.

mib-view — The MIB View for the community to access.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add community public, and the community has read-write management right to View viewDefault:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server community public read-write viewDefault
```

49.6 snmp-server host

Description

The **snmp-server host** command is used to add Notification. To delete the corresponding Notification, please use **no snmp-server host** command.

Syntax

```
snmp-server host ip udp-port user-name [ smode { v1 | v2c | v3 } ] [ slev  
{ noAuthNoPriv | authNoPriv | authPriv } ] [ type { trap | inform } ] [ retries retries ]  
[ timeout timeout ]  
no snmp-server host ip user-name
```

Parameter

ip — The IP Address of the management Host. Both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported, for example 192.168.0.100 or fe80::1234.

udp-port — UDP port, which is used to send notifications. The UDP port functions with the IP address for the notification sending. It ranges from 1 to 65535.

user-name — The User name of the management station.

smode — The Security Model of the management station, with v1, v2c and v3 options. By default, the option is v1.

slev — The Security Level of SNMP v3 User. There are three options, including noAuthNoPriv (No authentication algorithm but a user name match is applied to check packets, and no privacy algorithm is applied to encrypt them), authNoPriv (An authentication algorithm is applied to check packets, but no privacy algorithm is applied to encrypt them) and authPriv (An authentication algorithm and a privacy algorithm are applied to check and encrypt packets). By default, the Security Level is noAuthNoPriv.

type — The type of the notifications, with trap and inform options. Trap indicates traps are sent, while inform indicates informs are sent. The inform type has a higher security than the trap type and resend and timeout need to be configured if you select this option. You can only select the trap type in Security Model v1. By default, the type of the notifications is "trap".

retries — The amount of times the switch retries an inform request, ranging from 1 to 255. The switch will resend the inform request if it doesn't get the response from the management station during the Timeout interval, and it will terminate resending the inform request if the resending times reach the specified Retry times.

timeout — The maximum time for the switch to wait for the response from the management station before resending a request, ranging from 1 to 3600 in seconds.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Add a Notification entry, and configure the IP address of the management Host as 192.168.0.146, the UDP port as 162, the User name of the management station as admin, the Security Model of the management station as v2c, the type of the notifications as inform, the maximum time for the switch to wait as 1000 seconds, and the retries time as 100:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server host 192.168.0.146 162 admin smode v2c
type inform retries 100 timeout 1000
```

Add a Notification entry, and configure the IP Address of the management Host as fe80::1234, the UDP port as 162, the User name of the management station as admin, the Security Model of the management station as v2c, the type of the notifications as inform, the maximum time for the switch to wait as 1000 seconds, and the retries time as 100:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server host fe80::1234 162 admin smode v2c type  
inform retries 100 timeout 1000
```

49.7 snmp-server engineID

Description

The **snmp-server engineID** command is used to configure the local and remote engineID of the switch. To restore to the default setting, please use **no snmp-server engineID** command.

Syntax

```
snmp-server engineID {[ local local-engineID] [ remote remote-engineID]}  
no snmp-server engineID
```

Parameter

local-engineID — Local Engine ID for local clients. The Engine ID is a unique alphanumeric string used to identify the SNMP engine on the switch. Its length ranges from 10 to 64 hexadecimal characters, which must be even number meanwhile.

remote-engineID — Remote Engine ID for the switch. The Engine ID is a unique alphanumeric string used to identify the SNMP engine on the remote device which receives informs from the switch. Its length ranges from 10 to 64 hexadecimal characters, which must be even number meanwhile. The **snmp-server engineID** will be disabled if the **local** and **remote** are both not configured.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the local engineID as 1234567890, and the remote engineID as abcdef123456:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server engineID local 1234567890 remote  
abcdef123456
```

49.8 snmp-server traps snmp

Description

The **snmp-server traps snmp** command is used to enable SNMP standard traps which include four types: linkup, linkdown, warmstart and coldstart. The command without parameter enables all SNMP standard traps. All SNMP standard traps are enabled by default. To disable the sending of SNMP standard traps, please use **no snmp-server traps snmp** command.

Syntax

```
snmp-server traps snmp [ linkup | linkdown | warmstart | coldstart |  
auth-failure ]
```

```
no snmp-server traps snmp [ linkup | linkdown | warmstart | coldstart |  
auth-failure ]
```

Parameter

linkup — Indicates a port status changes from linkdown to linkup, and can be triggered when you connect a device to a port.

linkdown — Indicates a port status changes from linkup to linkdown, and can be triggered when you disconnect a device to a port.

warmstart — Indicates the SNMP feature on the switch is reinitialized with the physical configuration unchanged. The trap can be triggered if you disable and then enable SNMP after the SNMP is completely configured and enabled.

coldstart — Indicates an SNMP initialization caused by the reinitialization of the switch system. The trap can be triggered when you reboot the switch.

auth-failure — Triggered when a received SNMP request fails the authentication.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable SNMP standard linkup trap for the switch:

49.9 snmp-server traps

Description

The **snmp-server traps** command is used to enable SNMP extended traps. To disable the sending of SNMP extended traps, please use **no snmp-server traps** command. All SNMP extended traps are disabled by default.

Syntax

```
snmp-server traps { rate-limit | cpu | flash | lldp remtableschange | lldp topologychange | loopback-detection | storm-control | spanning-tree | memory }
```

```
no snmp-server traps { bandwidth-control | cpu | flash | lldp remtableschange | lldp topologychange | loopback-detection | storm-control | spanning-tree | memory }
```

Parameter

rate-limit —Monitors whether the bandwidth has reached the limit you have set. The trap can be triggered when the Rate Limit feature is enabled and packets are sent to the port with a rate higher than what you have set.

cpu —Monitors the load status of the switch CPU. The trap can be triggered when the utilization rate of the CPU has exceeded the limit that you have set. The limit of CPU utilization rate for the switch is 80% by default.

flash —Triggered when flash is modified during operations such as backup, reset, firmware upgrade, configuration import, and so on.

lldp remtableschange —An lldp RemTablesChange notification is sent when the value of lldp StatsRemTableLastChangeTime changes. It can be utilized by an NMS host to trigger LLDP remote systems table maintenance polls.

lldp topologychange —A notification generated by the local device to sense the change in the topology that indicates a new remote device attached to a local port, or a remote device disconnected or moved from one port to another.

loopback-detection —The feature is used to detect loopbacks. And the trap is disabled by default. The system will generate the trap when a loopback is detected or cleared.

storm-control —The feature is used to monitor network storms. And the trap is disabled by default. The system will generate the trap when the rate of broadcast or multicast reaches the limit of storm control.

spanning-tree —The feature is used to monitor the spanning tree status. And the trap is disabled by default. The system will generate the trap in the following situations: a port changes from non-forwarding state to forwarding state or the other way round; a port receives a packet with TC flag or a TCN packet.

memory —The feature is used to monitor the memory. And the trap is disabled by default. The system will generate the trap when the memory utilization exceeds 80%.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable SNMP extended bandwidth-control trap for the switch:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server traps bandwidth-control
```

49.10 snmp-server traps vlan

Description

The **snmp-server traps vlan** command is used to enable the corresponding VLAN traps. The command without parameter enables all SNMP VLAN traps. To disable this function, please use **no snmp-server traps vlan** command. All VLAN traps are disabled by default.

Syntax

```
snmp-server traps vlan [ create | delete ]
```

```
no snmp-server traps vlan [create | delete ]
```

Parameter

create —Triggered when certain VLANs are created successfully.

delete —Triggered when certain VLANs are deleted successfully.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable all SNMP extended VLAN-related traps for the switch:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server traps vlan
```

Enable VLAN-created trap only for the switch:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server traps vlan create
```

49.11 snmp-server traps security

Description

The **snmp-server traps security** command is used to enable the corresponding security traps. To disable this feature, please use **no snmp-server traps security** command. All security traps are disabled by default.

Syntax

```
snmp-server traps security { dhcp-filter | ip-mac-binding | acl }
```

```
no snmp-server traps security { dhcp-filter | ip-mac-binding }
```

Parameter

dhcp-filter — Triggered when the DHCPv4 Filter feature is enabled and the switch receives DHCP packets from an illegal DHCP server.

ip-mac-binding — Triggered when the ARP Inspection feature is enabled and the switch receives an illegal ARP packet, or the IPv4 Source Guard feature is enabled and the switch receives an illegal IP packet.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the DHCP filter trap for the switch:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server traps security dhcp-filter
```

49.12 snmp-server traps acl

Description

The **snmp-server traps acl** command is used to enable the ACL trap. To disable this feature, please use **no snmp-server traps acl** command. It is disabled by default.

The trap monitors matched ACL information, including the matched ACL ID, rule ID and the number of the matched packets. With both this trap and the Logging feature in ACL rule settings enabled, the switch will check the matched ACL information every five minutes and send SNMP traps if there is any updated information.

Syntax

snmp-server traps acl

no snmp-server traps acl

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the ACL trap for the switch:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server traps acl
```

49.13 snmp-server traps ip

Description

The **snmp-server traps ip** command is used to enable IP traps. To disable this feature, please use **no snmp-server traps ip** command. All IP traps are disabled by default.

Syntax

snmp-server traps ip { change | duplicate }

no snmp-server traps ip { change | duplicate }

Parameter

change — Enable SNMP IP change traps. The trap monitors the IP changed of each interface. The trap can be triggered when the IP address of any interface is changed.

duplicate — Enable SNMP IP duplicate traps. The trap can be triggered when the switch detects an IP conflict event.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the IP-Change trap for the switch:

```
Switch(config)# snmp-server traps ip change
```

49.14 snmp-server traps power (Only for Certain Devices)



Note: Only certain devices support this command.

Description

The **snmp-server traps power** command is used to enable PoE traps. The command without parameter enables all PoE traps. To disable this feature, please use **no snmp-server traps power** command. All PoE traps are disabled by default.

Syntax

snmp-server traps power [over-max-pwr-budget | port-pwr-change | port-pwr-deny | port-pwr-over-30w | port-pwr-overload | port-short-circuit | thermal-shutdown]

no snmp-server traps power [over-max-pwr-budget | port-pwr-change | port-pwr-deny | port-pwr-over-30w | port-pwr-overload | port-short-circuit | thermal-shutdown]

Parameter

over-max-pwr-budget —Triggered when the total power required by the connected PDs exceeds the maximum power the PoE switch can supply.

port-pwr-change —Triggered when the total power required by the connected PDs exceeds the maximum power the PoE switch can supply.

port-pwr-deny —Triggered when the switch powers off PDs on low-priority PoE ports. When the total power required by the connected PDs exceeds the system power limit, the switch will power off PDs on low-priority PoE ports to ensure stable running of the other PDs.

port-pwr-over-30w —Triggered when the power required by the connected PD exceeds 30 watts.

port-pwr-overload —Triggered when the power required by the connected PD exceeds the maximum power the port can supply.

port-short-circuit —Triggered when a short circuit is detected on a port.

thermal-shutdown —Triggered when the PSE chip overheats. The switch will stop supplying power in this case.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable all PoE traps for the switch:

```
T1600G-28MPS(config)# snmp-server traps power
```

49.15 snmp-server traps link-status

Description

The **snmp-server traps link-status** command is used to enable SNMP link status trap for the specified port. To disable the sending of SNMP link status trap, please use **no snmp-server traps link-status** command. By default, it is disabled.

Syntax

```
snmp-server traps link-status
```

```
no snmp-server traps link-status
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable SNMP link status trap for port 3:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/3
```

```
Switch(config-if)# snmp-server traps link-status
```

49.16 rmon history

Description

The **rmon history** command is used to configure the history sample entry. To return to the default configuration, please use **no rmon history** command. RMON (Remote Monitoring), basing on SNMP architecture, functions to monitor the network. History Group is one of the commonly used RMON Groups. After a history group is configured, the switch collects network statistics information periodically, based on which the management station can monitor network effectively.

Syntax

```
rmon history index interface gigabitEthernet port [ interval interval ]  
[ owner owner-name ] [ buckets number ]
```

```
no rmon history index
```

Parameter

index—— The index number of the entry, ranging from 1 to 12, in the format of 1-3,5.

port——The Ethernet port number.

interval—— The interval to take samplings from the port, ranging from 10 to 3600 in seconds. By default, it is 1800.

owner-name—— The owner of the history sample entry, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. By default, it is "monitor".

number—— The maximum number of buckets desired for the RMON history group of statistics, ranging from 1 to 130. The default is 50 buckets.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the sample port as Gi1/0/2 and the sample interval as 100 seconds for the entry 1-3:

```
Switch(config)# rmon history 1-3 interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2 interval  
100 owner owner1
```

49.17 rmon event

Description

The **rmon event** command is used to configure the entries of SNMP-RMON Event. To return to the default configuration, please use **no rmon event** command. Event Group, as one of the commonly used RMON Groups, is used to define RMON events. Alarms occur when an event is detected.

Syntax

```
rmon event index [user user-name] [description descript] [type { none | log | notify | log-notify }] [owner owner-name]
```

```
no rmon event index
```

Parameter

index — The index number of the event entry, ranging from 1 to 12. You can only select one entry for each command.

user-name — The name of the User to which the event belongs, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. By default, it is "public".

descript — The description of the event, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. By default, it is empty.

type — The event type, with none, log, notify and both options. None indicates no processing, log indicates logging the event, notify indicates sending trap messages to the management station, and both indicates logging the event and sending trap messages to the management station.

owner-name — The owner of the event entry, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. By default, it is "monitor".

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the user name of entry 1, 2, 3 and 4 as user1, the description of the event as description1, the type of event as log and the owner of the event as owner1:

```
Switch(config)# rmon event 1-4 user user1 description description1 type log owner owner1
```

49.18 rmon alarm

Description

The **rmon alarm** command is used to configure SNMP-RMON Alarm Management. To return to the default configuration, please use **no rmon alarm** command. Alarm Group is one of the commonly used RMON Groups. RMON alarm management allows monitoring the specific alarm variables. When the value of a monitored variable exceeds the threshold, an alarm event is generated, which triggers the switch to act in the set way.

Syntax

```
rmon alarm index { stats-index sindex } [ alarm-variable { revbyte | revpkt |  
bpkt | mpkt | crc-lign | undersize | oversize | jabber | collision | 64 | 65-127 |  
128-511 | 512-1023 | 1024-10240 } ] [ s-type { absolute | delta } ]  
[ rising-threshold r-hold ] [ rising-event-index r-event ] [ falling-threshold  
f-hold ] [ falling-event-index f-event ] [ a-type { rise | fall | all } ] [ owner  
owner-name ] [ interval interval ]  
no rmon alarm index
```

Parameter

index — The index number of the Alarm Management entry, ranging from 1 to 12, in the format of 1-3,5.

sindex — Specify the statistics index.

alarm-variable — The alarm variable. By default, the option is revbyte.

s-type — Sample Type, which is the sampling method for the selected variable and comparing the value against the thresholds. There are two options, absolute and delta. Absolute indicates comparing the values directly with the thresholds at the end of the sampling interval. Delta indicates subtracting the last sampled value from the current value, and then comparing the difference in the values with the threshold. By default, the Sample Type is absolute.

r-hold — The rising counter value that triggers the Rising Threshold alarm, ranging from 1 to 2147483647. By default, it is 100.

r-event — Rise Event, which is the index of the corresponding event which will be triggered if the sampled value is larger than the Rising Threshold. It ranges from 1 to 12.

f-hold — The falling counter value that triggers the Falling Threshold alarm, ranging from 1 to 2147483647. By default, it is 100.

f-event — Fall Event, which is the index of the corresponding event which will be triggered if the sampled value is lower than the Falling Threshold. It ranges from 1 to 12.

a-type — Alarm Type, with rise, fall and all options. Rise indicates that the alarm event will be triggered when the sampled value exceeds the Rising Threshold, fall indicates that the alarm event will be triggered when the sampled value is under the Falling Threshold, and all indicates that the alarm event will be triggered either the sampled value exceeds the Rising Threshold or is under the Falling Threshold. By default, the Alarm Type is all.

owner-name — The owner of the entry, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. By default, it is monitor.

interval — The alarm interval time, ranging from 10 to 3600 in seconds. By default, it is 1800.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure rmon alarm entries 1-3 binding with statistics entry 2, the owners as owner1 and the alarm intervals as 100 seconds:

```
Switch(config)#rmon alarm 1-3 stats-index 2 owner owner1 interval 100
```

49.19 rmon statistics

Description

The **rmon statistics** command is used to configure the entries of SNMP-RMON statistics. To delete the corresponding entry, please use **no rmon statistics** command. The maximum supported entries are 1000.

Syntax

```
rmon statistics index interface gigabitEthernet port [ owner owner-name ]  
[ status { underCreation | valid } ]
```

```
no rmon statistics index
```

Parameter

index — The index number of the statistics entry, ranging from 1 to 65535, in the format of 1-3,5.

port — The statistics port number, in the format of 1/0/1.

owner-name — The creator of the event entry, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. By default, it is "monitor".

status — The status of the statistics entry, either "underCreation" or "valid". "underCreation" means this entry won't take effect until it is modified to "valid"; "valid" means this entry takes effect immediately after it is created.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the statistics entries 1-3 with the statistics port as 1/0/1, owner as owner1 and status as valid:

```
Switch(config)#rmon statistics 1-3 interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1 owner  
owner1 status valid
```

49.20 show snmp-server

Description

The **show snmp-server** command is used to display SNMP configuration globally.

Syntax

```
show snmp-server
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display SNMP configuration globally:

```
Switch# show snmp-server
```

49.21 show snmp-server view

Description

The **show snmp-server view** command is used to display the View table.

Syntax

```
show snmp-server view
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the View table:

```
Switch# show snmp-server view
```

49.22 show snmp-server group

Description

The **show snmp-server group** command is used to display the Group table.

Syntax

```
show snmp-server group
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the Group table:

```
Switch# show snmp-server group
```

49.23 show snmp-server user

Description

The **show snmp-server user** command is used to display the User table.

Syntax

```
show snmp-server user
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the User table:

```
Switch# show snmp-server user
```

49.24 show snmp-server community

Description

The **show snmp-server community** command is used to display the Community table.

Syntax

```
show snmp-server community
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the Community table:

```
Switch# show snmp-server community
```

49.25 show snmp-server host

Description

The **show snmp-server host** command is used to display the Host table.

Syntax

```
show snmp-server host
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the Host table:

```
Switch# show snmp-server host
```


49.26 show snmp-server engineID

Description

The **show snmp-server engineID** command is used to display the engineID of the SNMP.

Syntax

```
show snmp-server engineID
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the engineID:

```
Switch# show snmp-server engineID
```

49.27 show rmon history

Description

The **show rmon history** command is used to display the configuration of the history sample entry.

Syntax

```
show rmon history [ index ]
```

Parameter

index — The index number of the entry selected to display the configuration, ranging from 1 to 12, in the format of 1-3, 5. You can select more than one entry for each command. By default, the configuration of all history sample entries is displayed.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the configuration of all history sample entries:

```
Switch# show rmon history
```

49.28 show rmon event

Description

The **show rmon event** command is used to display the configuration of SNMP-RMON Event.

Syntax

```
show rmon event [index]
```

Parameter

index — The index number of the entry selected to display the configuration, ranging from 1 to 12, in the format of 1-3, 5. You can select more than one entry for each command. By default, the configuration of all SNMP-RMON enabled entries is displayed.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the Event configuration of entry1-4:

```
Switch# show rmon event 1-4
```

49.29 show rmon alarm

Description

The **show rmon alarm** command is used to display the configuration of the Alarm Management entry.

Syntax

```
show rmon alarm [index]
```

Parameter

index — The index number of the entry selected to display the configuration, ranging from 1 to 12, in the format of 1-3, 5. You can select more than one entry for each command. By default, the configuration of all Alarm Management entries is displayed.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the configuration of the Alarm Management entry 1-2:

```
Switch# show rmon alarm 1-2
```

49.30 show rmon statistics

Description

The **show rmon statistics** command is used to display the configuration of the specified statistics entry.

Syntax

```
show rmon statistics [ index ]
```

Parameter

index — The index number of the statistics entry selected to display the configuration, ranging from 1 to 65535. By default, the configuration of all statistics entries is displayed.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin level users have access to these commands.

Example

Display the configuration of the statistics entry 1:

```
Switch#show rmon statistics 1
```

Chapter 50 PoE Commands (Only for Certain Devices)



Note: Only certain devices support PoE commands.

PoE (Power over Ethernet) technology describes a system to transmit electrical power along with data to remote devices over standard twisted-pair cable in an Ethernet network. It is especially useful for supplying power to IP telephones, wireless LAN access points, cameras and so on.

50.1 power inline consumption (global)

Description

The **power inline consumption** command is used to configure the max power the PoE switch can supply globally.

Syntax

power inline consumption *power-limit*

Parameter

power-limit—The max power the PoE switch can supply.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Configure the max power the PoE switch can supply as 160 W:

```
Switch(config)# power inline consumption 160
```

50.2 power profile

Description

The **power profile** command is used to create a PoE profile for the switch. To delete the configured PoE profile configuration, please use **no power profile** command. PoE Profile is a short cut for the configuration of the PoE port. In a PoE profile, the PoE status, PoE priority and power limit are configured. You can specify a PoE profile for each PoE port individually.

Syntax

```
power profile name [supply {enable | disable} [priority {low | middle | high}  
[consumption { power-limit | auto | class1 | class2 | class3 | class4 }]]]
```

```
no power profile name
```

Parameter

name — The PoE profile name, ranging from 1 to 16 characters. If the name being assigned contains spaces then put it inside double quotes.

supply — The PoE status of the port in the profile. By default, the PoE status is "enable".

priority — The PoE priority of the port in the profile. The priority levels include "high", "middle" and "low" in descending order. When the supply power exceeds the system power limit, the PD linked to the port with lower priority will be disconnected. By default, the PoE priority is "low".

consumption — The max power the port in the profile can supply, with five options: "power-limit", "auto", "class1", "class2", "class3" and "class4". "Power-limit" indicates you can manually enter a value ranging from 1 to 300. The value is in the unit of 0.1 watt. For instance, if you want to configure the max power as 5w, you should enter 50. "Auto" indicates the value is assigned automatically by the PoE switch. "Class1" represents 4w. "Class2" represents 7w. "Class3" represents 15.4w. "Class4" represents 30w.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Create a PoE profile named "IP Camera" whose PoE status is "enable", PoE priority is "low" and the power limit is "5w":

```
Switch(config)# power profile "IP Camera" supply enable priority low  
consumption 50
```

50.3 power inline consumption (interface)

Description

The **power inline consumption** command is used to configure the power limit the corresponding port can supply.

Syntax

```
power inline consumption { power-limit | auto | class1 | class2 | class3 | class4 }
```

Parameter

power-limit — The max power the port in the profile can supply, with five options: "power-limit", "auto", "class1", "class2", "class3" and "class4". "Power-limit" indicates you can manually enter a value ranging from 1 to 300. The value is in the unit of 0.1 watt. For instance, if you want to configure the max power as 5w, you should enter 50. "Auto" indicates the value is assigned automatically by the PoE switch. "Class1" represents 4w. "Class2" represents 7w. "Class3" represents 15.4w. "Class4" represents 30w.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Configure the power limit as "5w" for port 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# power inline consumption 50
```

50.4 power inline priority

Description

The **power inline priority** command is used to configure the PoE priority for the corresponding port

Syntax

```
power inline priority { low | middle | high }
```

Parameter

priority — The PoE priority of the port. The priority levels include "high", "middle" and "low" in descending order. When the supply power exceeds the system power limit, the PD linked to the port with lower priority will be disconnected. By default, the priority level is "low".

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range

```
gigabitEthernet)
```

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Configure the PoE priority as “low” for port 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# power inline priority low
```

50.5 power inline supply

Description

The **power inline supply** command is used to configure the PoE status of the corresponding port.

Syntax

```
power inline supply { enable | disable }
```

Parameter

enable | disable — The PoE status of the port. By default, the PoE status is “enable”.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Enable the PoE feature for port 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# power inline supply enable
```

50.6 power inline profile

Description

The **power inline profile** command is used to bind a PoE profile to the corresponding port. To cancel the bind relation, please use **no power inline profile** command.

Syntax

power inline profile *name*

no power inline profile

Parameter

name — The name of the PoE profile to be bound to the port. If the name being assigned contains spaces then put it inside double quotes.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Bind the PoE profile named "IP Camera" to port 2:

```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# power inline profile "IP Camera"
```

50.7 power inline time-range

Description

The **power inline time-range** command is used to bind a PoE time-range to the corresponding port. To cancel the bind relation, please use **no power inline time-range** command.

Syntax

power inline time-range *name*

no power inline time-range

Parameter

name — The name of the PoE time-range to be bound to the port.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Bind the PoE time-range named "tRange2" to port 2:


```
Switch(config)# interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/2
Switch(config-if)# power inline time-range tRange2
```

50.8 show power inline

Description

The **show power inline** command is used to display the global PoE information of the system.

Syntax

```
show power inline
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the PoE information of the system:

```
Switch# show power inline
```

50.9 show power inline configuration interface

Description

The **show power inline configuration interface** command is used to display the PoE configuration of the certain port.

Syntax

```
show power inline configuration interface [ fastEthernet port |
gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port ]
```

Parameter

port — The Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the PoE configuration of all ports:

```
Switch# show power inline configuration interface
```

50.10 show power inline information interface

Description

The **show power inline information** command is used to display the PoE information of the certain port.

Syntax

```
show power inline information interface [ fastEthernet port |  
gigabitEthernet port | ten-gigabitEthernet port ]
```

Parameter

port—— The Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the PoE information of all ports:

```
Switch# show power inline information interface
```

50.11 show power profile

Description

The **show power profile** command is used to display the defined PoE profile.

Syntax

```
show power profile
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the defined PoE profile:

```
Switch# show power profile
```

Chapter 51 ARP Inspection Commands

ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) Detect function is to protect the switch from the ARP cheating, such as the Network Gateway Spoofing and Man-In-The-Middle Attack, etc.

51.1 ip arp inspection

Description

The **ip arp inspection** command is used to enable the ARP Detection function globally. To disable the ARP Detection function, please use **no ip arp detection** command.

Syntax

ip arp inspection
no ip arp inspection

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the ARP Detection function globally:

```
Switch(config)#ip arp inspection
```

51.2 ip arp inspection validate

Description

The **ip arp inspection validate** command is used to enable the switch to check whether the received ARP packet is illegal. To disable the feature please use **no ip arp detection validate** command.

Syntax

ip arp inspection validate { src-mac | dst-mac | ip }
no ip arp inspection validate { src-mac | dst-mac | ip }

Syntax

`src-mac` — Enable the switch to check whether the source MAC address and the sender MAC address are the same when receiving an ARP packet. If not, the ARP packet will be discarded.

`dst-mac` — Enable the switch to check whether the sender IP address of all ARP packets and the target IP address of ARP reply packets are legal. The illegal packets will be discarded.

`ip` — Enable or disable the switch to check whether the sender IP address of all ARP packets and the target IP address of ARP reply packets are legal. The illegal packets will be discarded.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the switch to check whether the source MAC address and the sender MAC address are the same when receiving an ARP packet

```
Switch(config)#ip arp inspection validate src-mac
```

51.3 ip arp inspection vlan

Description

The `ip arp inspection vlan` command is used to enable the ARP Detection function on VLANs. To disable the ARP Detection function on VLANs, please use `no ip arp detection vlan` command.

Syntax

```
ip arp inspection vlan vlan-list
```

```
no ip arp inspection vlan vlan-list
```

Syntax

vlan-list — Enter the VLAN ID. The format is 1,5-9.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the ARP Detection function on VLAN 2:

```
Switch(config)#ip arp inspection vlan 2
```

51.4 ip arp inspection vlan logging

Description

The **ip arp inspection vlan logging** command is used to enable the Log function on the specific VLAN. To disable the Log function on the VLAN, please use **no ip arp detection vlan logging** command.

Syntax

ip arp inspection vlan *vlan-list* **logging**

no ip arp inspection vlan *vlan-list* **logging**

Syntax

vlan-list — Enter the VLAN ID. The format is 1,5-9.

logging — Enable the Log feature to make the switch generate a log when an ARP packet is discarded.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the log feature on VLAN 2:

```
Switch(config)#ip arp inspection vlan 2 logging
```

51.5 ip arp inspection trust

Description

The **ip arp inspection trust** command is used to configure the port for which the ARP Detect function is unnecessary as the Trusted Port. To clear the Trusted Port list, please use **no ip arp detection trust** command. The specific ports, such as up-linked port and routing port and LAG port, should be set as Trusted Port. To ensure the normal communication of the switch, please configure the ARP Trusted Port before enabling the ARP Detect function.

Syntax

```
ip arp inspection trust  
no ip arp inspection trust
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the Gigabit Ethernet ports 1/0/2-5 as the Trusted Port:

```
Switch(config)#interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/2-5  
Switch(config-if-range)#ip arp inspection trust
```

51.6 ip arp inspection limit-rate

Description

The **ip arp inspection limit-rate** command is used to configure the ARP speed of a specified port. To restore to the default speed, please use **no ip arp inspection limit-rate** command.

Syntax

```
ip arp inspection limit-rate value  
no ip arp inspection limit-rate
```

Parameter

value —The value to specify the maximum amount of the received ARP packets per second, ranging from 1 to 300 in pps(packet/second). By default, the value is 100.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the maximum amount of the received ARP packets per second as 50 pps for Gigabit Ethernet port 5:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
Switch(config-if)#ip arp inspection limit-rate 50
```

51.7 ip arp inspection burst-interval

Description

The **ip arp inspection burst-interval** command is used to configure the burst interval of a specified port. To restore to the default speed, please use **no ip arp inspection burst-interval** command.

Syntax

```
ip arp inspection burst-interval value
no ip arp inspection burst-interval
```

Parameter

value — Specify a time range. If the speed of received ARP packets in this time range reaches the limit for this time range, the port will be shut down. The valid values are from 1 to 15 seconds, and the default value is 1 second.

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Configure the burst interval as 2 seconds for Gigabit Ethernet port 5:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
Switch(config-if)#ip arp inspection burst-interval 2
```

51.8 ip arp inspection recover

Description

The **ip arp inspection recover** command is used to restore a port to the ARP transmit status from the ARP filter status.

Syntax

```
ip arp inspection recover
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet)

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Restore Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/5 to the ARP transmit status:

```
Switch(config)#interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/5
Switch(config-if)#ip arp inspection recover
```

51.9 show ip arp inspection

Description

The **show ip arp inspection** command is used to display the ARP detection global configuration including the enable/disable status and the Trusted Port list.

Syntax

```
show ip arp inspection
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the ARP detection configuration globally:

```
Switch(config)#show ip arp inspection
```

51.10 show ip arp inspection interface

Description

The **show ip arp inspection interface** command is used to display the interface configuration of ARP detection.

Syntax

```
show ip arp inspection interface [ gigabitEthernet port]
```

Parameter

port—The Ethernet port number.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)#show ip arp inspection interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

Display the configuration of all Ethernet ports:

```
Switch(config)#show ip arp inspection interface
```

51.11 show ip arp inspection vlan

Description

The **show ip arp inspection vlan** command is used to display the VLAN configuration of ARP detection.

Syntax

```
show ip arp inspection vlan
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the ARP Inspection configuration of VLAN:

```
Switch(config)#show ip arp inspection vlan
```

51.12 show ip arp inspection statistics

Description

The **show ip arp inspection statistics** command is used to display the number of the illegal ARP packets received.

Syntax

```
show ip arp inspection statistics
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the number of the illegal ARP packets received:

```
Switch(config)#show ip arp inspection statistics
```

51.13 clear ip arp inspection statistics

Description

The **clear ip arp inspection statistics** command is used to clear the statistic of the illegal ARP packets received.

Syntax

```
clear ip arp inspection statistics
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin, Operator and Power User level users have access to these commands.

Example

Clear the statistic of the illegal ARP packets received:

```
Switch(config)#clear ip arp inspection statistics
```

Chapter 52 ND Detection Commands

The ND Detection feature allows the switch to detect the ND packets based on the binding entries in the IPv6-MAC Binding Table and filter out the illegal ND packets. Before configuring ND Detection, complete IPv6-MAC Binding configuration. For details, refer to IPv6-MAC Binding Configurations.

52.1 ipv6 nd detection

Description

The **ipv6 nd detection** command is used to enable the ND Detection function globally. To disable the ND Detection function, please use **no ipv6 nd detection** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 nd detection
no ipv6 nd detection
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Example

Enable the ND Detection function globally:

```
Switch(config)#ipv6 nd detection
```

52.2 ipv6 nd detection vlan

Description

The **ipv6 nd detection vlan** command is used to enable ND Detection function on a specified VLAN. To disable ND Detection function on this VLAN, please use **no ipv6 nd detection vlan** command.

Syntax

```
ipv6 nd detection vlan vlan-range
no ipv6 nd detection vlan vlan-range
```

Parameter

vlan-range——Enter the vlan range in the format of 1-3, 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Example

Enable the ND Detection function on VLAN 1,4,6-7:

```
Switch(config)#ipv6 nd detection vlan 1,4,6-7
```

52.3 ipv6 nd detection vlan logging

Description

The **ipv6 nd detection vlan logging** command is used to enable Log function on a specified VLAN. To disable Log function on this VLAN, please use **no ipv6 nd detection vlan logging** command.

Syntax

ipv6 nd detection vlan *vlan-range* **logging**

no ipv6 nd detection vlan *vlan-range* **logging**

Parameter

vlan-range——Enter the vlan range in the format of 1-3, 5.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Example

Enable the Log function on VLAN 1,4,6-7:

```
Switch(config)#ipv6 nd detection vlan 1,4,6-7 logging
```

52.4 ipv6 nd detection trust

Description

The **ipv6 nd detection trust** command is used to configure the port for which the ND Detection function is unnecessary as the Trusted Port. To clear the Trusted Port list, please use **no ipv6 nd detection trust** command .The specific port, such as up-linked port, routing port and LAG port, should be set

as Trusted Port. To ensure the normal communication of the switch, please configure the ND Detection Trusted Port before enabling the ND Detection function.

Syntax

```
ipv6 nd detection trust
no ipv6 nd detection trust
```

Command Mode

Interface Configuration Mode (interface gigabitEthernet / interface range gigabitEthernet/ interface port-channel / interface range port-channel)

Example

Configure the Gigabit Ethernet ports 1/0/2-5 as the Trusted Port:

```
Switch(config)#interface range gigabitEthernet 1/0/2-5
Switch(config-if-range)#ipv6 nd detection trust
```

52.5 show ipv6 nd detection

Description

The **show ipv6 nd detection** command is used to display the ND detection global configuration including the enable/disable status.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 nd detection
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Example

Display the ND Detection configuration globally:

```
Switch(config)#show ipv6 nd detection
```

52.6 show ipv6 nd detection interface

Description

The **show ipv6 nd detection interface** command is used to display the interface configuration of ND Detection.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 nd detection interface[ fastEthernet port | gigabitEthernet port |  
ten-gigabitEthernet port | port-channel port-channel-id]
```

Parameter

port—The Ethernet port number.

port-channel-id— The ID of the port channel.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Example

Display the configuration of Gigabit Ethernet port 1/0/1:

```
Switch(config)#show ipv6 nd detection interface gigabitEthernet 1/0/1
```

Display the configuration of all Ethernet ports:

```
Switch(config)#show ipv6 nd detection interface
```

52.7 show ipv6 nd detection vlan

Description

The **show ipv6 nd detection vlan** command is used to display the VLAN configuration of ND Detection.

Syntax

```
show ipv6 nd detection vlan
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Example

Display the ipv6 ND Detection configuration of VLAN.

```
Switch(config)#show ipv6 nd detection vlan
```


Chapter 53 System Log Commands

The log information will record the settings and operation of the switch respectively for you to monitor operation status and diagnose malfunction.

53.1 logging buffer

Description

The **logging buffer** command is used to store the system log messages to an internal buffer. To disable the log buffer function, please use the **no logging buffer** command. Local Log is the system log information saved in the switch. It has two output channels, that is, it can be saved to two different positions, log buffer and log flash memory. The log buffer indicates the RAM for saving system log and the information in the log buffer can be got by [show logging buffer](#) command. It will be lost when the switch is restarted.

Syntax

logging buffer
no logging buffer

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the system log buffer:

```
Switch(config)#logging buffer
```

53.2 logging buffer level

Description

The **logging buffer level** command is used to configure the severity level and the status of the configuration input to the log buffer. To return to the default configuration, please use **no logging buffer level** command.

Syntax

logging buffer level *level*

no logging buffer level

Parameter

level— Severity level of the log information output to each channel. There are 8 severity levels marked with values 0-7. The smaller value has the higher priority. Only the log with the same or smaller severity level value will be output. By default, it is 6 indicating that the log information with level 0-6 will be saved in the log buffer.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Set the severity level as 5:

```
Switch(config)#logging buffer level 5
```

53.3 logging file flash

Description

The **logging file flash** command is used to store the log messages in a file in the flash on the switch. To disable the log file flash function, please use **no logging file flash** command. This function is disabled by default. The log file flash indicates the flash sector for saving system log. The information in the log file of the flash will not be lost after the switch is restarted and can be got by the [show logging flash](#) command.

Syntax

logging file flash

no logging file flash

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable the log file flash function:

```
Switch(config)#logging file flash
```

53.4 logging file flash frequency

Description

The **logging file flash frequency** command is used to specify the frequency to synchronize the system log file in the log buffer to the flash. To resume the default synchronizing frequency, please use the **no logging file flash frequency** command.

Syntax

```
logging file flash frequency { periodic periodic | immediate }
```

```
no logging file flash frequency
```

Parameter

periodic — The frequency to synchronize the system log file in the log buffer to the flash, ranging from 1 to 48 hours. By default, the synchronization process takes place every 24 hours.

immediate — The system log file in the buffer will be synchronized to the flash immediately. This option will reduce the life of the flash and is not recommended.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Specify the log file synchronization frequency as 10 hours:

```
Switch(config)#logging file flash frequency periodic 10
```

53.5 logging file flash level

Description

The **logging file flash level** command is used to specify the system log message severity level. Messages with a severity level equal to or higher than this value will be stored to the flash. To restore to the default level, please use **no logging file flash level** command.

Syntax

logging file flash level *level*

no logging file flash level

Parameter

level — Severity level of the log message. There are 8 severity levels marked with values 0–7. The smaller value has the higher priority. Only the log with the same or smaller severity level value will be saved to the flash. By default, it is 3 indicating that the log message marked with 0–3 will be saved in the log flash.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Save the log messages with their severities equal or higher than 7 to the flash :

```
Switch(config)#logging file flash level 7
```

53.6 logging host index

Description

The **logging host index** command is used to configure the Log Host. To clear the configuration of the specified Log Host, please use **no logging host index** command. Log Host is to receive the system log from other devices. You can remotely monitor the settings and operation status of other devices through the log host.

Syntax

logging host index *idx host-ip level*

no logging host index *idx*

Parameter

idx—— The index of the log host. The switch supports 4 log hosts at most.

host-ip—— The IP for the log host.

level—— The severity level of the log information sent to each log host. There are 8 severity levels marked with values 0-7. The smaller value has the higher priority. Only the log with the same or smaller severity level value will be sent to the corresponding log host. By default, it is 6 indicating that the log information marked with 0-6 will be sent to the log host.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable log host 2 and set its IP address as 192.168.0.148, the level 5:

```
Switch(config)# logging host index 2 192.168.0.148 5
```

53.7 logging console

Description

The **logging console** command is used to send the system logs to the console port. To disable logging to the console, please use **no logging console** command. This function is enabled by default.

Syntax

logging console

no logging console

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Enable logging to the console port:

```
Switch(config)# logging console
```

53.8 logging console level

Description

The **logging console level** command is used to limit messages logged to the console port. System logs no higher than the set threshold level will be displayed on the console port. To restore the threshold level to default value, please use **no logging console level** command.

Syntax

```
logging console level level
```

```
no logging console level
```

Parameter

level — Severity level of the log information output to the console port. There are 8 severity levels marked with values 0–7. The smaller value has the higher priority. Only the log with the same or smaller severity level value will be output to the terminal devices. By default, it is 5 indicating that all the log information between level 0–5 will be output to the terminal devices.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Output the log information with severity levels between 0–7 to the console port:

```
Switch(config)# logging console level 7
```

53.9 logging monitor

Description

The **logging monitor** command is used to display the system logs on the terminal devices. To disable logging to the terminal, please use **no logging monitor** command. This function is enabled by default.

Syntax

```
logging monitor  
no logging monitor
```

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Disable logging to the terminal devices:

```
Switch(config)# no logging monitor
```

53.10 logging monitor level

Description

The **logging monitor level** command is used to limit messages logged to the terminal devices. System logs no higher than the set threshold level will be displayed on the terminal devices. To restore the threshold level to default value, please use **no logging monitor level** command.

Syntax

```
logging monitor level level  
no logging monitor level
```

Parameter

level— Severity level of the log information output to the terminal devices. There are 8 severity levels marked with values 0–7. The smaller value has the higher priority. Only the log with the same or smaller severity level value will

be output to the terminal devices. By default, it is 5 indicating that all the log information between level 0–5 will be output to the terminal devices.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Output the log information with severity levels between 0–7 to the terminal devices:

```
Switch(config)# logging monitor level 7
```

53.11 clear logging

Description

The **clear logging** command is used to clear the information in the log buffer and log file.

Syntax

```
clear logging [ buffer | flash ]
```

Parameter

buffer | flash —The output channels: buffer and flash. Clear the information of the two channels, by default.

Command Mode

Global Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

Only Admin and Operator level users have access to these commands.

Example

Clear the information in the log file:

```
Switch(config)# clear logging buffer
```


53.12 show logging local-config

Description

The **show logging local-config** command is used to display the configuration of the Local Log output to the console, the terminal, the log buffer and the log file.

Syntax

```
show logging local-config
```

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration of the Local Log:

```
Switch(config)# show logging local-config
```

53.13 show logging loghost

Description

The **show logging loghost** command is used to display the configuration of the log host.

Syntax

```
show logging loghost [ index ]
```

Parameter

index —The index of the log host whose configuration will be displayed, ranging from 1 to 4. Display the configuration of all the log hosts by default.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the configuration of the log host 2:

```
Switch(config)# show logging loghost 2
```

53.14 show logging buffer

Description

The **show logging buffer** command is used to display the log information in the log buffer according to the severity level.

Syntax

```
show logging buffer [ level level]
```

Parameter

level — Severity level. There are 8 severity levels marked with values 0–7. The information of levels with priority not lower than the select level will display. Display all the log information in the log buffer by default.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the log information from level 0 to level 5 in the log buffer:

```
Switch(config)# show logging buffer level 5
```

53.15 show logging flash

Description

The **show logging flash** command is used to display the log information in the log file according to the severity level.

Syntax

```
show logging flash [ level level]
```

Parameter

level — Severity level. There are 8 severity levels marked with values 0–7. The information of levels with priority not lower than the select level will display. Display all the log information in the log file by default.

Command Mode

Privileged EXEC Mode and Any Configuration Mode

Privilege Requirement

None.

Example

Display the log information with the level marked 0-3 in the log file:

```
Switch(config)# show logging flash level 3
```